

Unit - 1  
**A HERO**

**I Four alternatives are given . Choose the best alternative:**

**1. The boy who fought the tiger stayed on the tree for half – a – day - because he**

- a. wanted to watch the tiger from the tree top      b. wanted to rest for some time  
c. was waiting for help      d. did not like the tiger

**Ans.: was waiting for help**

**2. Swami’s father asked him to sleep alone in the office room as he**

- a. wanted him to catch the burglar      b. wanted him to prove that he had courage  
c. wanted him to look after the office      d. wanted him to prove that he had strength

**Ans.: b. wanted him to prove that he had courage**

**3. A burglar is a person who**

- a. enters a house to steal      b. kills a tiger  
c. writes for a newspaper      d. bites other people

**Ans.: enters a house to steal**

**4. Swami decided to sleep under the bench because**

- a. he felt it was a safe place      b. it was near the door  
c. it was not dusty      d. it was made of wood

**ans. : he felt it was a safe place**

**5. For Swami events took an unexpected turn because**

- a. his father was angry with him      b. his father read about a newspaper report  
c. his home work was not done      d. his exams were near

**Ans.: b. his father read about a newspaper report**

**6. Swami thought that the boy in the report was not a boy but a grown-up person because**



**7. Why were congratulations showered on Swami?**

**Ans.:** Swami had bitten the burglar taking him to be the devil. The burglar's cry brought Swami's father and others to the scene leading to his arrest. So congratulations were showered on Swami.

**8. Why did Swami feel relieved at the end?**

**Ans.:** The next day Swamy slept beside his granny. His father did not protect much. Swami felt relieved.

**9. How was Swami honoured by his classmates, teacher and the headmaster?**

**Ans.:** Congratulations were showered on Swami. His classmates looked at him with respect and his teacher patted on his back. The headmaster said that he was a tree scout.

**10. Do you think Swami really wanted to join the police? If not, what did he want to be?**

**Ans.:** No, Swami was not interested to join the police. He wanted to become an engine driver, railway guard or a bus conductor.

**11. "You must sleep along hereafter", said Swami's father. By doing so, what was Swami supposed to prove?**

**Ans.:** By sleeping alone, Swami was supposed to prove his courage. He was expected to show that even he has courage.

**12. What were the excuses given by Swami in order to escape from sleeping along?**

**Ans.:** Swami said that he would sleep alone from the first of next month. He also said that the office was dusty and full of scorpions.

**III Read each of the following extracts and answer the questions given below:**

**1. "Leave alone strength. Can you prove you have courage?"**

a. What was the view of Swami's father regarding courage?

**Ans.:** Swami's father felt that courage was more important than strength and age.

b. How did he want his son to prove that he had courage?

**Ans.:** He challenged his son to sleep alone in the office room.

**2. “A frightful proposition, Swami thought”**

- a. What was the frightful proposition?

**Ans.:** The frightful proposition was that Swami’s father wanted him to sleep alone in the office room that night.

- b. Why did Swami regard it as frightful?

**Ans.:** Swami used to sleep with his granny in the passage and any change in this left him trembling and awake all night.

**3. “You must sleep alone hereafter!”**

- a. Who did he usually sleep with?

**Ans.:** Swami usually slept with his granny

- b. Why did Swami’s father want him to sleep alone?

**Ans.:** Swami’s father wanted his son to prove that he had the courage to sleep alone.

**4. “Your office room is very dusty and there may be scorpions behind your law books”.**

- a. Why did Swami make this remark?

**Ans.:** Swami made this remark because he wanted an excuse for not sleeping in the office room.

- b. What does it reveal about his character?**

**Ans.:** He did not have the courage to tell his father that he was afraid to sleep alone.

**5. “He wished that the tiger had not spared the boy”**

- a. What do the underlined words imply?

**Ans.:** These words mean that he wished that the tiger had killed the boy

- b. Why did Swami have such thoughts?

**Ans.:** Swami was upset because he was asked to sleep alone.

**6. ‘Aiyoo, Something has bitten me’**

- a. Why had he been bitten?

**Ans.:** Swami thought that it was the devil who had come to attack him. So, he bit him to save himself.

- b. How did the speaker suffer as a result of being bitten?

**Ans.:** The speaker shouts of pain. This brings the people of the house there leading to his arrest.

**7. The inspector said, “Why don’t you join the police when you are grown up?”**

- a. Why do you think the inspector said this?

**Ans.:** The inspector thinks that Swami was a brave boy so he said this.

- b. Do you feel Swami would be happy to do so?

**Ans.:** Swami had caught the burglar by accident. He did not want to join the police.

**8. “Congratulations were showered on Swami next day”**

- a. Why was Swami congratulated?

**Ans.:** Swami had caught one of the notorious house breakers of the district.

- b. Do you feel Swami deserves the praise? Give reason.

**Ans.:** Swami had better the burglar out of fright. He was not really a hero.

**IV. Answer each of the following questions in a paragraph of 8-10 sentences:**

**1. A report about a boy in the newspaper was an unexpected event in Swami’s life. Justify.**

**Ans.:** The newspaper carried a report about a village lad who had fought bravely against a tiger, while he was returning home by the jungle path. Swami argued that a boy could not fight a tiger, it had to be a strong, grown-up person. His father disagreed saying that courage was more important. Swami was not ready to accept this. His father then challenged him to show his courage by sleeping alone in the office that night. While Swami was sleeping there, he saw a dark figure. Believing it to be the devil. Swami dug his teeth into its leg. It turned out to be a notorious burglar whose loud cry brought others to the scene. The burglar was caught and Swami became a hero over night.

**2. What desperate attempts did Swami make to escape from his father?**

**Ans.:** Swami’s father challenged him to sleep alone in the office room that night. Swami was filled with fear and tried desperately to make his father change his mind. He told his father that he would sleep alone from the first of the next month. But his father did not agree.

Swami then went to sleep near his granny, pulled the blanket over his face and pretended to be fast asleep. However, his father soon came there and pulled him out of bed. Swami tried to appeal to his

granny and his mother to save him but his father would have none of it. So Swami's desperate attempts failed.

**3. Narrate Swami's dreadful experience when he was lying under the bench.**

**Ans.:** Swami crept under the bench, shut his eyes tight and covered himself with the blanket. Soon he fell asleep. He began to have a nightmare that a tiger was chasing him and he could not escape from its claws. With a desperate effort he opened his eyes. As he lay in fright he heard a rustling sound. He tried to look out in the darkness and saw something moving. He felt that it was the devil who would surely attack him. He crawled from the bench, caught hold of the figure and bit it hard to save himself.

\*\*\*\*\*

Unit - 1  
**GRANDMA CLIMBS A TREE**

**I. Four alternatives are given for each of the following questions/incomplete statements. Write the correct or the most appropriate answer in the space provided**

**1. Grandma was a genius because .....**

- |                    |                           |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| a. she was skilful | b. she could climb a tree |
| c. she was good    | d. she loved trees        |

**Ans.: b. she could climb a tree**

**2. The poet calls his grandmother .....**

- |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| a. a brave woman | b. a genius      |
| c. childish      | d. a silly woman |

**Ans.: b. a genius**

**3. Poet's grandma was happier in .....**

- |            |           |
|------------|-----------|
| a. a boat  | b. a lift |
| c. a house | d. a tree |

**Ans.: a. a tree**

**4. Grandma learnt to climb a tree from .....**

- |               |                |
|---------------|----------------|
| a. a trainee  | b. her brother |
| c. her father | d. her son     |

**Ans.: b. her brother**

**5. As soon as the doctor recommended 'a quiet week in bed' for granny, all the family members .....**

- |                       |                    |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| a. sighed with relief | b. laughed happily |
| c. danced with joy    | d. felt very bad   |

**Ans.: a. sighed with relief**

6. For granny, 'a quiet week in bed' was like .....

- |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|
| a. hell   | b. heaven |
| c. prison | d. jail   |

**Ans.: a hell**

7. Grandma wanted a house .....

- |                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| a. in a tree top | b. beside a river |
| c. on a beach    | d. in a forest    |

**Ans.: a. in a tree top**

8. My grandmother was a genius. The underlined word means .....

- |                    |                      |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| a. a tree climber  | b. an elderly person |
| c. a gifted person | d. a happy person    |

**Ans.: c. a. gifted person**

9. The opposite of 'gracefully' is .....

- |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| a. ungracefully  | b. disgracefully |
| c. misgracefully | d. ingrately     |

**Ans.: b. disgracefully**

10. "It was like a brief season in hell" Figure of speech used in the above sentence is

- |                 |             |
|-----------------|-------------|
| a. simile       | b. metaphor |
| c. alliteration | d. paradox  |

**Ans.: a. simile**

**II. Answer the following in a word or a phrase or in a sentence (one mark questions)**

1. What does the poet call his grandmother?

**Ans.:** The poet calls his grandmother a genius.

2. Why does the poet call his grandmother 'genius'?

**Ans.:** The poet calls his grandmother 'genius' because, she could climb trees.

3. Who taught grandmother to climb trees?

**Ans.:** Her loving brother taught grandmother to climb trees.

**4. What was her age when she climbed the tree last?**

**Ans.:** She was sixty-two when she climbed the tree last.

**5. What did the doctor strongly recommend?**

**Ans.:** The doctor strongly recommended a quiet week in bed.

**6. What did grandma tell her son one day?**

**Ans.:** Grandma told her son to build a house in a tree top.

**7. According to poets, what was grandmother's right?**

**Ans.:** To reside in a tree is considered as grandmother's right.

**8. "My dad knew his duties" what did he think his duty was?**

**Ans.:** Poets father was a dutiful son and in accordance with grandma's wishes, he immediately started to build a house for her in a tree top.

**III Answer the following questions in two or three sentences:**

**1. What did people tell the grandmother as went by?**

**Ans.:** People told grandma that she should stop climbing trees as she grew old, and also that one should grow old gracefully

**2. What was usual in the reply given by the grandma?**

**Ans. :** Grandma was very childish in her reply. She said that she would grow disgracefully.

**3. What did the doctor recommend? How did the family members react?**

**Ans.:** The doctor recommended grandma a quiet week in bed. Family members sighed with relief.

**4. How did grandma feel while she lay in bed?**

**Ans.:** Grandma felt miserable as she lay in bed. She loved to look at the dancing leaves. For her, it was like a brief season in hell.

**5. What did she ask for as soon as she was better?**

**Ans.:** As soon as she was better, Grandma asked her son to build a house in a tree top.

**IV. Read each of the following extracts and answer the questions given below:**

**1. "Eversince childhood, said had this gift"**

a. Who does 'she' refers to?

**Ans.:** Grandma

- b. What was the gift that she had?

**Ans.:** She had the gift of climbing trees easily whether it was spreading or high.

**2. I Strongly recommend a quiet week in bed”**

- a. Who recommended bed rest?

**Ans.:** Doctor

- b. For whom was the rest recommended and why?

**Ans.:** Rest was recommended to grandma because she was ill.

**3. She sat up and said, “I’ll lie here no longer”**

- a. Who does ‘I’ refer to?

**Ans.:** ‘I’ refers to grandma.

- b. Why was the speaker forced to lie down?

**Ans.:** After the rescue, the doctor took granny’s temperature and strongly recommended her a quiet week bed.

**4. He said, “That’s all right. You’ll have what you want dear”.**

- a. Who does ‘you’ refer to?

‘You’ refers to granny.

- b. What does the speaker mean by above words?

Granny wished for a house in a tree top and his son readily agreed to fulfill her wish.

**5. “I’ll start work tonight”**

- a. Who started to start the work ?

**Ans.:** Poet’s father

- b. What was the work and why was he doing it?

**Ans.:** The work was to build a house in tree top. He wanted to do it to fulfill his mother’s wish to live on a tree.

\*\*\*\*\*

Unit - 2

**THERE'S A GIRL BY THE TRACKS**

**I Four Alternatives are given for each of the following questions/incomplete statements. Write the correct or the most appropriate answer in the space provided.**

**1. The person who helped Roma was.....**

- a. a truck driver
- b. an auto rickshaw driver
- c. a car driver
- d. a motorist

**Ans. a. a truck driver**

**2. Roma's belongings had been found by .....**

- a. Baleshwar Mishra
- b. Dinesh Talreja
- c. a railway employee
- d. the truck driver

**Ans. a. a railway employee**

**3. "There's a girl by the tracks, "the voices cried out. The voices were of .....**

- a. railway employees
- b. train passengers
- c. truck drivers
- d. railway cops

**Ans. b. train passengers**

**4. Baleshwar Mishra was a .....**

- a. B.Com graduate
- b. marketing officer
- c. high school drop out
- d. call centre executive

**Ans. c. high school drop out**

**5. The ..... advised Baleshwar to take Roma to a nearby hospital.**

- a. truck driver
- b. cop
- c. commuters
- d. on duty physician

**Ans. d. on duty physician**

**6. Where did Baleshwar find Roma at last?**

- a. By the side of the Tracks
- b. By the side of the Road
- c. By the side of the Building
- d. On the Road

**Ans. a. By the side of the Tracks**

7. .... pulled the red chain to help the wounded girl

- a. Dinesh Talreja
- b. Vijay
- c. Baleshwar Mishra
- d. a railway employee

**Ans. c. Baleshwar Mishra**

8. The other passengers did not volunteer to help Baleshwar because

- a. they thought one man was enough
- b. the train was moving too fast
- c. they were afraid of being involved
- d. they did not know Baleshwar

**Ans. c. They were afraid of being involved**

9. "Oh, I couldn't thank him". Baleshwar thought. The 'him' refers to the

- a. traffic policeman
- b. on duty doctor
- c. railway employee
- d. tempo truck driver

**Ans. d. tempo truck driver**

10. Baleshwar had revisited the spot to .....

- a. investigate
- b. look for her belongings
- c. get assurance
- d. meet someone

**Ans : b. look for her belongings**

11. Roma's fall from the train could not be heard as

- a. people were talking loudly
- b. the train made a loud noise
- c. she fell unconscious
- d. the people in the train were busy

**Ans.: b. the train made a loud noise**

12. Baleshwar saw blood flowing out of a wound on Roma's head and he

- a. started giving her first aid
- b. went in search of a doctor
- c. left her to her fate
- d. lifted her and made his way across the tracks

**Ans. d. lifted her and made his way across the tracks.**

13. They arrived at a small hospital where

- a. they lacked staff and equipment
- b. they refused to treat Roma
- c. they operated on Roma
- d. they found that there was no doctor

**Ans. a. they lacked staff and equipment**

**II. Answer the following questions in two or three sentences each :**

**1. How did Roma fall on the tracks?**

**Ans :** Roma had squeezed herself near the door of the crowded ladies compartment of a Mumbai local train. Suddenly she got pushed, lost her foothold and was thrown out of the coach.

**2. What did Baleshwar mishra do as soon as he saw the girl lying next to the tracks?**

**Ans :** On seeing the Girl on the tracks, Baleshwar immediately pulled the red emergency chain of the train. As the train slowed, he asked the other passengers to go with him to help the girl. No one came forward. Then Baleshwar bravely jumped off the still moving train and rushed towards the girl.

**3. Who Volunteered to help Baleshwar? How did he help him?**

**Ans :** A tempo truck driver stopped when he saw Baleshwar standing by the road holding the injured girl in his arms. He helped Baleshwar to lay the girl down in the back of his truck and drove them to a small hospital, but it lacked facilities. So he drove them to a bigger hospital where she could be treated well.

**4. How did the doctors at Divine Multi Specialty Hospital treat Roma?**

**Ans. :** The Medical Director of the hospital saw the extent of Roma's injuries and immediately admitted her to the ICU without any paper work. X-rays were taken out and the doctors found that she needed surgery. She was taken care of very well and recovered within a few days.

**5. Why did Baleshwar revisit the spot where Roma had fallen?**

**Ans. :** Roma's brother, Dinesh, had told him that her call phone and handbag were missing. Baleshwar revisited the spot where Roma had fallen. With the help of a railway employee he was able to recover some of her belongings.

**6. After Roma's recovery, what did she say about Baleshwar?**

**Ans. :** Roma was amazed to hear about the manner in which she had been rescued. She wondered how a stranger could jump off a train and risk his life for her. She could not imagine what would have happened to her if Baleshwar had not been there. She felt that she could never repay him for what he had done.

**7. "Take the girl to Airoli," Suggested the cop. But Baleshwar disagreed. Why did he do so?**

**Ans. :** Baleshwar felt that the girl needed medical help immediately. Airoli was at least 10 kilometers away and he knew of a small hospital close by. So he did not agree with the cop.

**8. Was Baleshwar right in asking Roma her name while she lay in a critical condition? Justify your answer.**

**Ans. :** Baleshwar was absolutely right in asking Roma her name. He also got from her, her brother's name and phone number. With this he was able to call her brother and inform him about Roma's accident.

**9. Baleshwar had a good memory. Do you agree with this? Give examples to support your view.**

**Ans. :** Yes, Baleshwar had a good memory. Roma had given him her brother's cell phone number and he memorized it quickly before she lost consciousness again. Thus he was able to contact Dinesh and inform him about the accident.

**10. If Baleshwar had not come forward to help Roma, what would have happened to her?**

**Ans. :** If Baleshwar had not come forward to help Roma, She would have bled to death. Luckily Baleshwar took her to the hospital in time and got her treated.

**11. "Roma Talreja tried to settle into a corner near the door in the train". Was she right in doing this?**

**Ans. :** No, it was wrong on Roma's part to settle into a corner near the door. It was very risky as there was a great rush. People were pushing each other to stand safely in less space and she could have fallen which she did.

### III. Read the following extracts and answer the questions given :

**1. There's a girl by the tracks!"**

a. Who cried out?

**Ans.** The train passenger

b. Why was she by the tracks?

**Ans.** She had lost her balance and was thrown out of the train.

**2. Let's go and help her.**

a. What happened there?

**Ans.** There was a girl by the tracks.

b. Why did they have to help?

**Ans.** She had fallen from the train.

**3. I hope I'm not too late.**

a. What did he have to do?

**Ans.** He had to take her to the doctor

b. Why did he hope so?

**Ans.** He knew she was hurt badly and hoped he could help her.

**4. Please help me take her to a hospital.**

- a. Whom did he request?

**Ans.** He requested the motorists who drove by.

- b. Why did he have to take her to the hospital?

**Ans.** She was hurt badly and was unconscious due to the fall.

**5. I can't imagine what would have happened if Baleshwar hadn't been there.**

- a. Why was Baleshwar there?

**Ans.** Baleshwar was there to help Roma.

- b. What would have happened?

**Ans.** She would have died on the tracks without his help.

**6. They fear getting trapped in the courts or with the police.**

- a. Who says this?

**Ans.** Baleshwar Mishra

- b. Why do they fear?

**Ans.** They fear because they may have to go to the courts or police station several times to give witness leaving their job.

**7. "I can never repay Baleshwar"**

- a. Who is Baleshwar?

**Ans.** Baleshwar is a young man who helped Roma.

- b. Why can't she repay?

**Ans.** He has done a great deed. He saved her life from dying.

**8. "Chacha, can I borrow your mobile?"**

- a. Who wanted the mobile?

**Ans.** Baleshwar

- b. Why did he want the mobile?

**Ans.** To inform Roma's brother, Dinesh about her accident.

**IV. Answer in about eight – ten sentences:**

- 1. Give a brief account of how Baleshwar helped the girl on the tracks. Or Baleshwar was god sent to Roma. Justify.**

**Ans. :** When Baleshwar saw the girl lying on the tracks, he jumped down from the moving train and ran towards her. There was no help in sight so he lifted her up, crossed the tracks and walked till he reached the road. He waited patiently with the girl in his arms for a long time. He stopped a number

of motorists but no one heeded to his call. Finally, a tempo truck driver stopped and helped him to take the girl to a hospital nearby where she was given first aid. The doctor there advised him to take her to a larger hospital. Baleshwar did this and the girl got the necessary medical care. Within a few days she recovered finally.

- 2. The Dalai Lam says “Love and Compassion are the true religions to me. But to develop this, we do not need to believe in any religion”. How does this relate to the lesson “There’s a girl by the tracks!”**

**Ans. :** This saying of Dalai Lama’s relates a lot to this lesson. Baleshwar saw Roma lying on the tracks. Both didn’t know each other. Even then, he pulled the chain and got off the train to help her. He showed humanity and kindness towards Roma. Had he not done this, anything could have happened to her. He took her to the hospital and even informed her brother about her injuries. In this way he made us realize that showing love and compassion towards others is the true religion.

- 3. After Roma made a full recovery, Baleshwar met her. Briefly describe how Roma thanked him, and what Baleshwar said in reply.**

**Ans. :** After Roma made a full recovery, she was amazed to know how Baleshwar rescued her. She thought it is astonishing that a stranger would jump off a train and risk his life for her. She couldn’t imagine what would have happened if Baleshwar hadn’t been there. She could never repay him. On the other hand Baleshwar was proud of his good deed. He acknowledged her gratitude.

\*\*\*\*\*

Unit - 2  
**QUALITY OF MERCY**

**I. Four alternatives are given for each of the following questions/incomplete statements. Write the correct or the most appropriate answer in the space provided.**

**1. The poet says that the quality of mercy is twice blessed because**

- |                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| a. it is sent from heaven | b. it is the mightiest                     |
| c. it is an earthly power | d. it blesses both the giver and the taker |

**Ans. d. it blesses both the giver and the taker**

**2. It droppeth as the gentle rain from heaven. Here droppeth from heaven means**

- |                              |                     |
|------------------------------|---------------------|
| a. given to heaven           | b. as far as heaven |
| c. as pure as given from God | d. very impure      |

**Ans. c. as pure as given from God**

**3. His sceptre shows ..... Here 'Sceptre' can be identified with**

- |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| a. a poor man | b. a teacher  |
| c. a king     | d. a minister |

**Ans. c. a king**

**4. A decorated road carried by a king as a symbol of power is called a**

- |           |            |
|-----------|------------|
| a. throne | b. crown   |
| c. robe   | d. sceptre |

**Ans. d. sceptre**

**5. According to the speaker, in king's. mercy is seated in the**

- |              |          |
|--------------|----------|
| a. heart     | b. head  |
| c. shoulders | d. mouth |

**Ans. a. heart**

**II. Answer in a word/a phrase/a sentence each :**

**1. Mercy is compared to something in the first two lines of the poem. What is it?**

**Ans. :** It is compared to the gentle rain from heaven.

2. **The speaker says that mercy is twice blessed? What does she mean by this?**

**Ans. :** Mercy blesses the giver and the taker too.

3. **“Sceptre shows the force of temporal power” In contrast, what or whose quality does mercy stand for?**

**Ans. :** Mercy is divine and flows from the heart

4. **Mention the three things of temporal power of a king.**

**Ans. :** Throne, Crown and Sceptre.

5. **When does earthly power show divine power?**

**Ans.:** When kings adopt mercy with justice.

### III. Answer the following in 2 or 3 sentences each:

1. **Mercy is compared to gentle rain from heaven. How is this comparison apt?**

**Ans. :** As the gentle rain falls on the earth, so also when mercy is shown it blesses the giver and the taker and given comfort.

2. **The speaker compares the power of the king with the power of mercy, saying that mercy is the mightiest of the mightiest. How does she justify this?**

**Ans. :** The king who has sceptre in his hand evokes a feeling of fear in the minds of others but the king who has a feeling of mercy in his heart possesses divine quality of mercy.

3. **The poem ‘Quality of Mercy’ has fourteen lines. But it is not a sonnet. Justify the statement.**

**Ans. :** This poem consists of fourteen lines but it is not a sonnet as there is no rhyme, scheme in the poem. In other words there isn't three quatrains and a couplet.

### IV. Read the following extracts and answer the questions given below:

1. **It droppeth as the gentle rain from heaven upon the place beneath. It is twice blest”**

a. What is compared to the gentle rain from heaven?

**Ans. :** Mercy

b. Why does the speaker feel it is twice blest?

**Ans.:** According to the speaker, the person who shows mercy and the person who receives mercy is also blest

2. **His sceptre shows the force of temporal power, The attribute to awe and majesty.**

a. How does the sceptre show temporal power?

**Ans.:** The sceptre creates fear among people.

- b. In contrast, what quality does mercy stand for?

**Ans.:** Mercy stands for divine quality and it flows from the heart.

**3. 'Its mightiest in the mightiest'**

- a. Who is mighty?

**Ans.:** Mercy

- b. How is it mighty?

**Ans.:** Quality of Mercy is more powerful than all the symbols of power on earth.

**4. It is an attribute to God himself.**

- a. What is this attribute?

**Ans.:** Quality of Mercy

- b. Why is it a quality of God?

**Ans.:** God is all merciful and anyone on earth who preaches it is like God.

**5. It blesseth him that gives, and him that takes**

- a. How does it bless the one who gives?

**Ans.:** The giver gets the blessing as he has helped the other person.

- b. How does it bless the one who takes?

**Ans.:** The taker is blest because he is forgiven

**6. Mercy is above the Sceptred sway.**

- a. What is a Sceptre?

**Ans.:** It is a decorated rod carried by monarchs.

- b. How is mercy above the Sceptred sway?

**Ans.:** Mercy is a divine quality or Godly power whereas Sceptre is an earthly temporal power.

**V. Answer in about eight sentences:**

- 1. How does the speaker in the court try to convince Shylock that mercy is twice blessed and is a divine quality? OR What does Portia tell Shylock about the quality of Mercy?**

**Ans.:** Portia, one of the main characters in the play 'The Merchant of Venice', argues why mercy is the greatest virtue of all. Portia compares mercy to the gentle rain that falls from heaven to the ground. Mercy blesses both the giver and the receiver. It is the most powerful of all virtues and enhances the glory of a king more than his crown. The sceptre of a monarch is a symbol of worldly power. It controls people through fear. The power of the sceptre mercy is divine and has its seat in the heart. The power of a man who shows mercy along with justice would be God – like in nature.

- 2. Write the summary of the poem 'Quality of Mercy'**

**Ans.:** The Quality of mercy is not forced. It drops down from heaven as a gentle rain upon the earth; blessing both the giver and the receiver. This quality is very might and is like a majestic enthroned Monarch who is looked with awe due to his sceptre and crown. The sceptre creates awe and fear in the hearts of the people. But mercy is above this. It resides in the hearts of the kings and is a quality of God himself. If mercy is a part of justice, then this earthly power shines like a Godly power.

**VI. Quote from memory the poem ‘Quality of Mercy’ (8 lines only)**

The quality of mercy is not strain'd;  
 It droppeth as the gentle rain from heaven  
 Upon the place beneath, It is twice blest:  
 It blesseth him that gives, and him that takes.  
 'Tis mightiest in the mightiest; it becomes

The throned monarch better than his crown.  
 His sceptre shows the force of temporal power,  
 The attribute to awe and majesty,  
 Wherein doth sit the dread and fear of kinds;  
 But mercy is above this sceptred sway;

It is enthroned in the heart of kings;  
 It is an attribute to God himself;  
 And earthly power doth then show likest God's  
 When mercy seasons justice.

**- William Shakespeare**

\*\*\*\*\*

Unit - 3  
**GENTLEMEN OF RIO EN MEDIO**

**I. Four alternatives are given. Choose the best alternative.**

**1. It took months of negotiation to come to an understanding with the old man because he**

- |                            |                                      |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| a. could not hear properly | b. could not understand the language |
| c. was not in a hurry      | d. did not like the Americans.       |

**Ans. : c. was not in a hurry**

**2. The old man was .....**

- |                  |          |
|------------------|----------|
| a. understanding | b. quick |
| c. unhurried     | d. witty |

**Ans.: c. unhurried**

**3. ‘The old man removed his hat and gloves, slowly and carefully’. This reminds us the actions of .....**

- |            |                  |
|------------|------------------|
| a. Chaplin | b. janitor       |
| c. Senator | d. Prince Albert |

**Ans. : a. Chaplin**

**4. The word “innumerable kin” means that the old man had a number of .....**

- |              |                         |
|--------------|-------------------------|
| a. children  | b. trees in his orchard |
| c. relatives | d. followers            |

**Ans. : c. relatives**

**5. In the meeting of the old man and the Americans, they talked about rain and the old man’s large family. It was .....**

- |  |
|--|
| a. to mock his large family                                  |
| b. to break the ice  |
| c. to make everyone know that it had not rained in that area |
| d. to know more about the old man’s family                   |

**Ans.: b. to break the ice**

**6. “Don Anselmo”, I said, “We have made a discovery”. The discovery was that the old man .....**

- a. did not own the trees
- b. had asked for a high price
- c. had many relatives
- d. owned more land than he thought

**Ans.: d. owned more land than he thought**

**7. The old man had agreed to sell the land for .....**

- a. twelve hundred dollars
- b. twelve thousand dollars
- c. seven hundred dollars
- d. seven thousand dollars

**Ans. : a. twelve hundred dollars**

**8. When the story teller offered the old man double the price he .....**

- a. jumped with joy
- b. stood up in anger
- c. took off his gloves
- d. bowed to all in the room

**Ans.: b. stood up in anger**

**9. After the survey, the Americans were willing to pay .....**

- a. twelve hundred dollars
- b. thrice the amount they had agreed
- c. almost twice the money they had agreed
- d. half of the money they had agreed

**Ans. : c. almost twice the money they had agreed**

**10. Don Anselmo agreed to sell the land for the Americans because**

- a. they have agreed to give twice the amount
- b. they are his friends
- c. they are good people
- d. they agreed to buy the land without trees

**Ans.: c. they are good people**

**11. Don Anselmo signed the deed .....**

- a. after taking twice the amount
- b. but refused to take more than the amount agreed upon
- c. without taking any money
- d. after demanding more money.

**Ans.: b. but refused to take more than the amount agreed upon**

**12. A piece of land where fruit trees are grown is called .....**

- a. a cottage
- b. a forest
- c. an orchard
- d. a creek

**Ans. c. an orchard**

**13. Don Anselmo took only twelve hundred dollars for the land finally because .....**

- a. Don Anselmo was a man of principles.
- b. the story teller failed to convince Don Anselmo to take more money
- c. the Americans refused to give more money
- d. the surveyor had fixed the amount for the land as twelve hundred dollars

**Ans. a. Don Anselmo was a man of principle**

**14. Dom Anselmo sold his land but he didn't sell his .....**

- a. Orchard
- b. trees
- c. horse
- d. river

**Ans. : b. trees**

**15. According to Don Anselmo, the real owners of the trees were .....**

- a. Don Anselmo himself
- b. the Americans
- c. the children of Rio en Medio
- d. the story teller

**Ans.: c. the children of Rio en Medio**

**16. Don Anselmo did not sell the trees because .....**

- a. trees were like children to him
- b. he thought they did not belong to him but to the children
- c. he had grown them in memory of his ancestors.
- d. he wanted his surroundings to be green

**Ans.: b. he thought they did not belong to him but to the children**

**17. The story teller spoke Spanish because .....**

- a. The story teller loved to speak Spanish
- b. Spanish is the official language in New Mexico
- c. Spanish is the official language in America
- d. He doesn't know any other language except Spanish

**II. Answer the following questions in two – three sentences each:**

**1. Describe the old man's property.**

**Ans.:** The old man's house was small, wretched but quaint. His Orchard was gnarled and beautiful. The little creek ran through his land.

**2. Where did Don Anselmo live? What work did he do?**

**Ans.:** Don Anselmo lived in a small, quaint house in Rio en Medio. He tilled the land belonging to his ancestors.

**3. Explain briefly the appearance and manners of Don Anselmo?**

**Ans.:** Don Anselmo wore an old, green faded coat. His gloves too were old and torn and his finger tips showed through them and carried a cane which was the skeleton of a worn – out umbrella. When he entered the room he bowed to all and slowly removed his hat and gloves.

**4. How did the old man greet the people who had been waiting for him?**

**Ans.:** The old man bowed to all of them in the room. He then removed his hat and gloves, slowly and carefully.

**5. What did the Americans speak about with Don Anselmo to break the ice?**

**Ans.:** The Americans spoke about rain and Don Anselmo's family to break the ice.

**6. What did the Americans discover after the survey?**

**Ans.:** After the survey, the Americans discovered that Don Anselmo owns more than eight acres of land which extends across the river.

**7. The story teller offered the old man almost the double of what he had quoted earlier. Why?**

**Ans.:** The story teller offered the old man almost the double of what he had quoted earlier because he discovered that Don Anselmo owns more than eight acres of land which extends across the river.

**8. What was the reaction of the old man to the story teller's offer?**

**Ans.:** The old man hung his head for a moment in thought, stood up and stared at the story teller's offer.

**9. After the survey why did the Americans offered double the quoted price for the old man's land.**

**Ans.:** The Americans were good people and when they found that Don Anselmo owned more than eight acres of land, they offered to pay double the price they had quoted earlier.

**10. Why did the story teller fail to convince Don Anselmo to accept more money?**

**Ans.:** The story teller failed to convince Don Anselmo to accept more money because Don Anselmo felt that he was insulted by the offer.

**11. Why do you think the Americans wanted to buy Don Anselmo's land?**

**Ans.:** The little creek ran through the land of Don Anselmo. His orchard was gnarled and beautiful. So, to lead a happy and peaceful life. The Americans wanted to buy Don Anselmo's land.

**12. Why did the story teller say that Americans bueana gentla?**

**Ans.:** The story teller said that the Americans are bueana gentla because they did not want to cheat Don Anselmo and they were willing to pay Don Anselmo twice the money for his land.

**13. Why do you think Don Anselmo did not sell the trees in the Orchard?**

**Ans.:** Don Anselmo planted a tree for every born child and so the trees in the Orchard belongs to the children of Rio-en-Medio. Hence Don Anselmo could sell only the Orchard but not the trees in the Orchard.

**14. How do you say that Don Anselmo was generous?**

**Ans.:** Don Anselmo was generous. Because he was a man of principles he refused to take the extra money offered by the Americans for his land.

**15. What did the story teller's friends complain?**

**Ans.:** The story teller's friends complained that the children of the village were over running the property purchased by them. The children came everyday, played under the trees and took blossoms.

**16. What changes did the Americans make to Don Anselmo's property? OR What were the changes made on the ranch after it was sold?**

**Ans.:** The Americans replastered the old house, pruned the trees and patched the fence.

**17. What did Don Anselmo do as he left the place with money?**

**Ans.:** Don Anselmo shook hands all around, put on his ragged gloves, took his cane and walked out with the boy behind him.

**18. What did the story-teller request Don Anselmo to do after the complaint?**

**Ans.:** The story teller told Don Anselmo that according to the deed, the Americans had complete possession of the property, but the children of the village over ran the orchard everyday. So, he requested Anselmo to stop the children from doing this so that the Americans could live in peace.

**19. What was Don Anselmo's reply to the story teller's request?**

**Ans.:** Don Anselmo replied that he had sold his property to the Americans because they were good people, but he did not sell them the trees.

**20. Why was the story-teller unable to convince the old man?**

**Ans.:** The Story-teller was unable to convince the old man because the old man insisted that he had sold the property and not the trees which belonged to the children. So, he had not taken double the price fixed for the land.

**21. Whose argument do you agree with? Don Anselmo's or the story teller's? Give reasons. (Open ended question) (Ans. is suggestive)**

**Ans.:** I agree with Don Anselmo's stuck to his principles that he had sold only the land and not the trees which belong to the children of the village. His argument was stronger than the story teller.

**III. Read the following extract and answer the questions given below:**

**1. “It took months of negotiation to come to an understanding with the old man”**

- a. What was the negotiation about?

**Ans. :** The negotiation was about the selling of the old man’s land.

- b. Why do you think it took months to come to an understanding?

**Ans.:** It took months to come to an understanding because the old man was in no hurry to sell

**2. ‘The old man removed his hat and gloves carefully’**

- a. Who is the old man referred here?

**Ans.:** The old man is Don Anselmo

- b. Whose style did it remind the writer of?

**Ans.:** It reminds the style of Charlie Chaplin

**3. “We have made a discovery”**

- a. What did they discover?

**Ans.:** They discovered that Don Anselmo owns more than eight acres of land

- b. What was the result of the discovery?

**Ans.:** As a result, they offered Don Anselmo double the price of what they had quoted earlier

**4. “These Americans are Buena gente”**

- a. What is the meaning of Buena gente according to the context?

**Ans.:** Buena gente means good people

- b. Why did the speaker called Americans Buena gente?

**Ans.:** The speaker called Americans Buena gente because after the survey, they did not cheat Don Anselmo and were ready to pay twice the money they had quoted earlier for the additional land.

**5. He said, “I do not like to have you speak to me in that manner”**

- a. What is the mood of the speaker?

**Ans.:** The speaker felt that he was being insulted

- b. What made him to react so?

**Ans.:** He said these words when the Americans offered him twice the money they had quoted earlier for his land.

**6. “I have agreed to sell my house and land for twelve hundred dollars and what is the price?”**

- a. When did the speaker say this?

**Ans.:** The old man said this when the Americans offered him double the price that had been quoted earlier for his land.

- b. What does this statement tell about the speaker?

**Ans.:** This statement tells that the speaker was not greedy and he was a man of principles.

**7. Don Anselmo said “I did not sell them the trees in the Orchard”.**

- a. Why didn't he sell the trees in the orchard?

**Ans.:** According to Don Anselmo he didn't sell the trees because the trees belong to the children of Rio-en-Medio

- b. How did Don Anselmo defend his statement?

**Ans.:** Don Anselmo defended that when a child was born in the village, a tree was planted and so the trees belonged to the children of the village.

**8. “The trees in that Orchard are not mine”.**

- a. According to Don Anselmo, who did the trees belong to?

**Ans.:** According to Don Anselmo, the tree belonged to the children of Rio-en-Medio

- b. Why did he feel so?

**Ans.:** He felt so because everytime a child was born in the village, he had planted a tree for that child.

**IV Answer the following in 8-10 sentences**

**1. Don Anselmo and the Americans were generous in their own ways. Explain.**

**Ans.:** The Americans informed Don Anselmo that after survey, they found that he owns more than eight acres and were willing to pay double the agreed amount. This shows that the Americans were generous and they did not want to cheat him. Once again when the old man stuck to his words that the trees belong to the children, they bought the trees individually from the villagers Don Anselmo, however was a man of principles and refused to take anything more than the amount agreed upon and expressed his generosity.

**2. At last, the problem of ownership was resolved, But it took a long time. What might be the reason for it.**

**Ans.:** After buying the property from Don Anselmo by the Americans the children of Rio en Medio, began to overrun the Orchard and spend most of their time there. This was brought to the notice of Don Anselmo and he was asked to stop the children. Don Anselmo claimed that he had sold the land to them but not the trees. He had planted a tree for each child born in the village and the trees belonged to the children, not to him. The owners were left with no choice. They had to buy the trees individually from the villages and this took a long time.

3. **“I did not sell the trees because I could not, they are not mine”. How did the old man support this statement?**

**Ans.:** The old man explained that he was the oldest person in the village. Almost everyone there was related to him and all the children of Rio en Medio were his neices and nephews. He planted a tree for every child that was born in the village. So the trees in the Orchard belonged to the children. Hence there was no way he could sell the trees along with the land.

4. **Don Anselmo’s reaction to the offer of more money was not expected. Justify this statement.**

**Ans.:** Don Anselmo agreed to sell his land for twelve hundred dollars. After the survey the Americans found that the land was more than 8 acres and they were willing to offer twice the amount for the extra land. The old man could have been happy but as he heard this the old man hung his head for a moment and stared at the story teller. He felt that he was being insulted. He told them that he had agreed to sell his property for twelve hundred dollars to the Americans because they are good and stuck to his words. This reaction of the old man is truly unexpected.

\*\*\*\*\*

Unit - 3  
**I AM THE LAND**

**I Four alternatives are given. Choose the best alternative and write in the space provided.**

**1. “I am the land. I wait.” Here ‘I wait’ suggests the feeling of**

- |              |            |
|--------------|------------|
| a. annoyance | b. joy     |
| c. patience  | d. disgust |

**Ans.: patience**

**2. “A chain line necklace  
Chokes me now” Here ‘chain line necklace’ refers to**

- |              |            |
|--------------|------------|
| a. a garland | b. a fence |
| c. trees     | d. grass   |

**Ans.: a fence**

**3. “You cannot put a fence  
Around the Planet Earth” The speaker here is showing a tone of**

- |               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| a. weakness   | b. patience       |
| c. excitement | d. self assertion |

**Ans.: self assertion**

**4. Which line tells that the earth is asserting itself?**

- you shout, I lie patient
- you say you own me
- you cannot put a fence around the planet earth
- you buy me

**Ans.: You cannot put a fence around the planet earth.**

**II. Answer the following questions in a word/phrase/a sentence**

**1. Who do you think is the speaker of the poem ‘I am the land’?**

**Ans.:** The speaker is ‘mother earth’.

**2. “You cannot put a fence around the planet earth” What is the tone of the speaker?**

**Ans.:** It is the tone of self assertion.

3. **“I wait” is repeated in the poem. What quality of the speaker is highlighted?**

**Ans.:** The word “I wait” highlights the speaker’s patience.

4. **Who is the speaker referring ‘you’ in the poem ‘I am the land’?**

**Ans.:** ‘you’ in the poem are the people/human beings.

### III. Answer the following questions in 2-3 sentences.

1. **“I wait” is repeated five times in the poem. What quality of the speaker is highlighted with this repetition?**

**Ans.:** Human beings are troubling the earth. They say that they own the lands proclaim that the land is theirs. Mother earth has an ocean of patience and bears all the cruelty committed by man.

2. **Bring out the contrast between the speaker and the reader in the poem, “I am the land”.**

**Ans.:** The speaker in the poem is land. It says that it is always patient and bears all that is done to it. The reader uses the land in many ways. He digs the land, grows fruits and trees and even fights for land.

3. **What are the activities which go on over the land?**

**Ans.:** Man buys land, digs land and plants trees, grows fruit on it. Children dance and play on land. Man also fences and makes boundaries over the land.

4. **“You cannot put a fence  
Around the planet Earth”**

**Is this a tone of weakness or self assertion? Give reason for your answer.**

**Ans.:** It is a tone of self assertion. The poet mocks at those who are greedy. They wage wars to acquire more land. The earth has given everything to us. Whatever injustice we are doing, the earth bears everything patiently. We cannot put a fence around the mother earth.

### IV. Read the following extracts and answer the questions given.

1. **“Then someone  
tickles me, plant life ..... fruit”**

- a. What does tickle mean in the context?

**Ans.:** According to the context tickle mean to plough the land.

- b. What is the mood of the speaker in the statement?

**Ans.:** The mother earth waits patiently when the people plough the land, plant, trees and grow fruits.

**2. “You come with guns  
a chain link necklace chokes me now”.**

- a. Why do they come with guns?

**Ans.:** The soldiers come with guns fighting for the land.

- b. What is the feeling of the speaker?

**Ans.:** People fight with guns for the land and mother earth feels suffocated with the action of men.

**3. “You cannot put a fence  
Around the planet earth”**

- a. What is the tone of the speaker here?

**Ans.:** It is a tone of self assertion

- b. Why does it feel so?

**Ans.:** The speaker mocks at the people who wage wars and build fences on the land to divide nations.

**V. Answer the following question in 8-10 sentences**

- 1. Write the summary of the poem “I am the land” OR How does the poet describe that the earth has an ocean of patience in the poem, “I am the land”.**

**Ans.:** In the poem ‘I am the land’ the poet depicts the mother earth as the speaker. Mother earth tells that she waits with patience when people claim that the land belongs to them. They occupy the land, plough, plant trees, grow fruits and grass. The children dance and play on the land. The land bears everything without a complaint. The soldiers come with guns fighting for the land. People build fences on the land to divide nations which suffocates like chains in her neck. But mother earth mocks at the people’s behavior with a tone of self assertion.

\*\*\*\*\*

Unit - 4

**THE BIRD OF HAPPINESS**

**I. Four alternatives are given for each of the following questions/incomplete statements. Write the correct or the most appropriate answer in the space provided.**

**1. The people of the poor area in Tibet believed that .....**

- a. happiness must exist somewhere in the world
- b. happiness will never exist
- c. happiness has nothing to do with people.
- d. happiness is not needed.

**Ans.: a. happiness must exist somewhere in the world**

**2. The bird of happiness was guarded by .....**

- a. two monsters
- b. three monsters
- c. one monster
- d. none of them

**Ans.: b. three monsters**

**3. The way Wangjia was sent to find the Bird of Happiness was in accordance with the ..... the people.**

- a. rules that govern
- b. wishes of the people
- c. habit of
- d. custom of

**Ans. : Custom of**

**4. Wangjia decided not to go back home because**

- a. people at home were waiting for him to bring back happiness
- b. people at home were waiting for him to return with gifts

- c. people were angry on him
- d. he wanted to live on the mountain.

**Ans. : a. people at home were waiting for him to bring back happiness**

**5. The third monster made Wangja lose his .....**

- a. food
- b. strength
- c. eyesight
- d. health

**Ans.: eyesight**

**6. The second monster blew off wangjia's .....**

- a. eyeballs
- b. food
- c. strength
- d. dress

**Ans.: b. food**

**7. It was believed that the three monsters could kill a man by .....**

- a. simply blowing through their beards
- b. turning everything into a desert
- c. turning the road into a vast scene.
- d. pulling out his eyeballs

**Ans. : a. simply blowing through their beards**

**8. Though Wangjia's feet cut to pieces, he continued his journey because he knew that people at home .....**

- a. were waiting to punish him for giving up
- b. were waiting for him to bring back happiness
- c. would no longer give him food
- d. would not call him a hero.

**Ans.: b. were waiting for him to bring back happiness**

**9. The third monster asked Wangjia to**

- a. kill Lousang's mother
- b. kill the old man Silong

- c. bring the bind's head
- d. bring Bhima's eye balls

**Ans.: d. bring Bhima's eye balls**

**10. The old folk used to say that happiness was a beautiful .....**

- a. tree
- b. mountain
- c. bird
- d. flower

**Ans. : c. bird**

**11. Wangjia refused to kill Lousang's mother because .....**

- a. he loved Lousang's mother
- b. he loved his own mother
- c. he was frightened to kill her
- d. he decided to disobey the monster

**Ans.: b. he loved his own mother**

**II. Answer the following questions in 2 or 3 sentences each.**

**1. What did the people in the poor area in Tibet suffer from OR**

**How can you say that the people in the poor area of Tibet were unhappy?**

**Ans.:** The poor area had no rivers or good land, no warmth or fresh flowers, no trees or green grass. The people suffered from hunger and cold all year round. So they were unhappy.

**2. What did the old folk of Tibet say about happiness?**

**Ans.:** The old folk used to say that happiness was a beautiful bird. It lived far away, on a snowy mountain in the east. Wherever the bird flew, happiness went with it.

**3. "Will I ever make it?" Why did Wangjia feel so?**

**Ans.:** In anger, the first monster blew through his beard and the smooth road became a vast scree. Every stone on it was as sharp as a knife. As Wangjia walked on it his boots got torn. His feet got cut. His hands were torn to pieces. The journey was very tough. So, he thought if he would ever make it.

**4. How was Wangjia made to suffer by the second monster?**

**Ans.:** The second monster blew through his beard. His bread bag flew into the sky. The blue mountains and green rivers turned into a desert. Wangjia suffered with no food. At first his stomach rumbled with hunger, his head swam and got sharp pain in his guts.

**5. What changes came over Wangjia as the Bird of Happiness caressed him?**

**Ans.:** As the bird of Happiness caressed Wangjia, his eyeballs flew back to their sockets, he saw much more brightly than before. All his wounds were healed and he was stronger than ever.

**6. Why did Wangjia decide not to go back?**

**Ans.:** Though the journey was very tough, Wangjia decided not to go back. He knew that the people at home were waiting for him to bring back happiness.

**7. What did the third monster warn Wangjia?**

**Ans.:** The third monster warned Wangjia that if he wanted to see the bird of Happiness. If he failed, the monster, would gouge out Wangjia's eye balls.

**8. How was the last journey of Wangjia different from the previous ones?**

**Ans.:** In the previous journey, Wangjia had his eyesight and was able to see his path. But in the last journey, he did not have eyesight. His eyeballs were gouged out by the third monster. He had to move groping his way with his hands on the ground.

**9. Why did the people offer Wangjia a number of things?**

**Ans.:** The girls of the village offered him barley wine. The mothers spread barley grains on his head. It was Tibetan custom to wish him a good journey.

**10. What brought hope to Wangjia's life?**

**Ans.:** Wangjia climbed up the peak of a snow covered mountain. There he heard the voice of the Bird of Happiness. Wangjia was filled with joy.

**III. Read the following extracts and answer the questions given.**

**1. "Every year people went to look for this bird, but not one of them did ever return"**

a. Which bird did the people go to look for?

**Ans.:** The people went to look for the Bird of happiness.

b. Why did they not return?

**Ans.:** The bird of happiness was guarded by three old monsters who could kill a man by simply blowing through their long beards.

**2. “But I am fond of my own grandpa and I’ll never kill another man’s!”**

- a. When did Wangjia say this?

**Ans.:** Wangjia said this when the second monster asked him to kill the old man Silong.

- b. What do these words show about his character?

**Ans.:** These words show that Wangjia was not only brave but was also kind at heart.

**3. “This must be the last ordeal” he thought.**

- a. What was the last ordeal the speaker had to face?

**Ans.:** When the third monster blew through his beard, Wangjia’s eyeballs jumped out of their sockets and he became blind.

- b. How did he face it?

**Ans.:** He continued his journey, groping his way with his hands on the ground. He climbed the peak of the mountain where the bird of happiness lived.

**4. “I love my own mother, and I’ll never kill another person’s” said Wangjia.**

- a. Who does Wangjia call as another person’s mother?

**Ans.:** Lousang’s mother

- b. What made him say these words? Or

Why was he not ready to kill another person’s mother?

**Ans.:** The first monster asked Wangjia to kill Lousang’s mother. He refused to do so because he loved his own mother very much.

**5. “My lovely child, have you come here for me?”**

- a. Why does the speaker say “lovely child”?

**Ans.:** The speaker said ‘lovely child’ because he had reached there by undergoing many hardships.

- b. Why did he want to meet the speaker?

**Ans.:** Wangjia wanted to meet the speaker, because he wanted to bring happiness to his people in the village

**6. Overwhelmed with joy, Wangjia replied “Yes, I have! My people long to see you day and night”. Please come back with me!”**

a. Who do the people long to see?

**Ans.:** The people long to see the bind of happiness

b. Why do the people long to see it day and night?

**Ans.:** The people in the poor area did not know what was happiness. They were waiting for Wangjia to return with the bind of happiness, so that they can be happy.

**IV Answer the following questions in 8-10 sentences:**

**1. What hardships did Wangjia undergo on his way to find the bird of happiness?**

**Ans.:** Wangjia came across three monsters on his way. They made him suffer because he refused to obey them. The first monster changed the smooth road into a vast scree. Walking on this, Wangjia’s boots got torn, his feet were cut and hands were torn to shreds. The second monster turned everything into a desert. He had no food at all. As a result, he suffered great pain in his stomach. When the third monster blew through his beard Wangjia’s eyeballs jumped out of their sockets and he became blind.

**2. Wangjia was face to face with three monsters. Each monster had his own wish. What contrast do you draw between the wishes of the monsters and wish of Wangjia?**

**Ans.:** On the way Wangjia meets three monsters. Each of the monsters wanted Wangjia to perform an evil deed in order to reach the bird. The first monster wanted him to kill Lousang’s mother. The second monster wanted to poison the old man, Silong. The third monster wanted him to bring back Bhima’s eyeballs. Wangjia wished to make the people of his land happy. He suffered a lot but did not follow the evil path. He proved that good always wins over the bad.

**3. How did the Bird of Happiness put an end to the hardships suffered by the people?**

**Ans.:** Standing on the mountain top, the Bind of Happiness gave three loud cries. At the first cry, a golden sun appeared through the clouds and a warm breeze to blow. At the second cry, the mountains were covered with forests, flowers began to bloom and birds began to sing. At the third cry, green fields and rivers appeared and white rabbits danced happily on the grass. From that day on, the people never suffered hardships again.

\*\*\*\*\*

Unit - 4  
**LAUGH AND BE MERRY**

**I Four alternatives are given for each of the following questions/incomplete statements. Write the correct or the most appropriate answer in the space provided**

**1. God made Heaven and Earth .....**

- |                      |                  |
|----------------------|------------------|
| a. to work hard      | b. for joy       |
| c. to show his power | d. for no reason |

**Ans.: b. for joy**

**2. In the poem “Laugh and Be Merry” the poet says, “We must treat one another like .....**

- |              |             |
|--------------|-------------|
| a. friends   | b. enemies  |
| c. strangers | d. brothers |

**Ans.: d. brothers**

**3. “Laugh for the time is brief, a thread the length of a span”. The figure of speech used here is .....**

- |                    |               |
|--------------------|---------------|
| a. simile          | b. Metaphor   |
| c. Personification | d. Synecdoche |

**Ans.: Metaphor**

**4. “Laugh till the game is played” This means that .....**

- a. We should laugh while we are playing
- b. We should laugh only at the end of the day
- c. We should be serious when we are about to die
- d. We should laugh till the end of our life

**Ans.: We should laugh till the end of our life**

**5. “He took in a rhyme**

**Made them, and filled them full with the strong red wine of his Mirth” The “He” refers to .....**

- a. The poet  
c. God
- b. Man  
d. a friend

**Ans. : c. God**

**6. In the poem “Laugh and Be Merry” ..... is mentioned as the evidence of happiness and merriment.**

- a. dance  
c. wine
- b. sang  
d. stars

**Ans.: sang**

**7. The poet John Masefield has compared the world to a beautiful .....**

- a. an inn  
c. dance
- b. star  
d. wine

**Ans.: a. an inn**

**8. The poet wants that we should .....**

- a. live this life happily  
c. have a positive attitude
- b. face the hardships  
d. all the above

**Ans.: all the above**

## **II Answer the following questions in a sentence**

**1. How can we better the world?**

**Ans.:** We can better the world with a song.

**2. Why should we be proud?**

**Ans.:** We should be proud because we belong to the old proud pageant of man/race of human beings

**3. According to the poet Masefield how should we live on this earth?**

**Ans.:** According to the poet Masefield, we should live on this earth as loving brothers

**4. What has the poet compared the world to in the poem “Laugh and Be Merry”?**

**Ans.:** The poet has compared the world to the rooms of a beautiful inn.

**5. Why does the poet Masefield call us as ‘guests’?**

**Ans.:** We are not immortal. We live on this earth for a short period and pass away. So, he calls us as the 'guests'.

### III Answer the following questions in 2-3 sentences

1. **Laughter not only makes us happy but will better the world also, says the poet. What does this mean?**

**Ans.:** When we laugh, we are happy and are able to make others happy. We spread joy and the world becomes a better place.

2. **Imagine a person is unjustly treated. What is the poet Masefield's advice to him?**

**Ans.:** The poet says that we should always laugh and be cheerful. People may treat us badly or unjustly but we should not lose heart. We should face the world with a smile.

3. **Why, according to the poet, has God created man?**

**Ans.:** God has created the Earth and filled it with beautiful things. God created man to enjoy the gifts of nature and fill his life with happiness.

4. **How should we find joy with the forces of nature?**

**Ans.:** The poet says that we should enjoy the beauty of the blue sky. We must fill ourselves with the light of the stars. We should work on the fertile, green land and bring joy to our lives.

5. **The poet advises us to laugh and merry. Can you think it is possible? Give examples.**

**Ans.:** Yes, it is possible. Life is short and we must make our life happier by laughing. We must be cheerful even when we face troubles. This will keep us away from all troubles.

### IV Read the following extracts and answer the questions given:

1. **“Laugh and be merry, remember, better the world with a song.  
Better the world with a blow in the teeth of a wrong”**

- a. How does the world become better; according to the poet?

**Ans.:** According to the poet, the world becomes better when we fill our lives with joy and laughter.

- b. What does he advise us to do if we are wronged?

**Ans.:** Even when we are wronged, we should not get upset. We should face the world with a smile.

2. **“Laugh, for the time is brief, a thread the length of a span”.  
Laugh and be proud to belong to the old proud pageant of man”**

- a. To what is the lifetime of a person compared?

**Ans.** The life time of a person is compared to a thread measuring a span.

- b. Why does the poet ask us to laugh?

**Ans.** Because life is short, Time is brief and we belong to the proud peagent of man.

**3. “Laugh and be merry together, like brother, akin  
Guesting awhile in the rooms of a beautiful inn”**

- a. To what does the poet compare our stay on earth?

**Ans.:** The poet says that the earth is like a beautiful inn. And we have come to stay in it as guests.

- b. How does he want us to live?

**Ans.:** We should consider all men as our brothers. We should live together in joy. Let us laugh till the day we die.

**4. ‘till the game is played’, till ‘the music ends’**

- a. What does the poet expect us to do?

**Ans.:** The poet wants us to laugh and be merry forever

- b. What do these phrases suggest?

**Ans.:** Life is compared to a game and ‘till the game is played’ refers to the end of life. ‘Till the music ends’ refers to the end of the joys of life.

**V Answer the following questions in 6-8 sentences.**

**1. Why, according to the poet should we laugh and be merry?**

**Ans.:** In this poem, the poet John Masefield urges us to fill our life with laughter. He says that laughter not only makes us happy, it also makes the world a better place. We should face troubles with a smile. Life is short – let us spend it in joy. We should remember that God has created the Earth and Heaven for us to be happy. The sky, the stars and the fertile green earth are all symbols of joy of God. Let us work cheerfully, enjoy the gifts of nature along with others. They are like our brothers.

The poet compares our life to a inn where we have to come to stay for a short time. So, let us be happy till we die.

**2. Write the summary of the poem “Laugh and Be Merry”**

**Ans.:** In this poem, the poet John Masefield suggests the readers to enjoy their life. We can make the world better place if we sing and be happy. Laughter and music help us to face the hardships of life. Life is short and we are lucky to have born as human beings. God has created Heaven and Earth out of his joy and filled it with music and happiness. Everyone knows that life is full of struggles but one must take them as a challenge and enjoy the joy and happiness given by God. This world is like an inn where we spend our time for a short period. Nobody knows when the music of life will stop and we will have to leave this world. So, till then we should live like brothers and sisters. We must live life to the fullest.

**VI. Quote from memory: (8 lines)**

Laugh and be merry, remember, better the world with a song,  
 Better the world with a blow in the teeth of a wrong,  
 Laugh, for the time is brief, a thread the length of a spa,  
 Laugh and be proud to belong to the old proud pageant of man.

Laugh and be merry: remember, in older time.  
 God made Heaven and Earth for joy. He took in a rhyme.  
 Made them, and filled them full with the strong red wine of his mirth  
 The splendid joy of the stars; the joy of the earth.

So we must laugh and drink from the deep blue cup of the sky,  
 Join the jubilant song of the great stars sweeping by,  
 Laugh, and battle, and work, and drink of the wine outpoured  
 In the dear green earth, the sign of the joy of the Lord.

Laugh and be merry together, like brothers akin,  
 Guesting awhile in the rooms of a beautiful inn,  
 Glad till the dancing stops, and the lilt of the music ends.  
 Laugh till the game is played; and be you merry, my friends.

\*\*\*\*\*

Unit - 5  
**THE CONCERT**

**I. Four alternatives are given for each of the following questions/incomplete statements. Write the correct or the most appropriate answer in the space provided.**

**1. Smitha is ..... years old.**

- |       |       |
|-------|-------|
| a. 12 | b. 16 |
| c. 10 | d. 14 |

**Ans.:** b. 16

**2. The maestro who was playing at Shanmukhananda Auditorium was .....**

- |                  |                        |
|------------------|------------------------|
| a. A.R. Rahaman  | b. Bismilla Khan       |
| c. Pandit Jasraj | d. Pandit Ravi Shankar |

**Ans.:** d. Pandit Ravi Shankar

**3. ‘It’s the chance of a life time’, said Ananth. What was the chance of a lifetime?**

- a. play sitar
- b. play with his sister
- c. attend Pandit Ravishankar’s concert
- d. go to cancer hospital

**Ans.:** c. attend Pandit Ravishankar’s concert

**4. Smitha and Ananth’s home town is .....**

- |            |             |
|------------|-------------|
| a. Bombay  | b. Gangapur |
| c. Lucknow | d. Delhi    |

**Ans.:** b. Gangapur

**5. Ananth was suffering from .....**

- |                  |                 |
|------------------|-----------------|
| a. hypertension  | b. tuberculosis |
| c. hepatitis – B | d. cancer       |

**Ans.:** d. cancer

**6. Smitha’s family moved to Bombay .....**

- a. so that Ananth could learn Sitar
- b. so that Ananth could learn tennis
- c. so that Ananth could be treated at the Cancer hospital
- d. so that Ananth could attend concerts.

**Ans.:** c. so that Ananth could be treated at the Cancer hospital

**7. In Bombay Ananth and his family stayed .....**

- a. with Aunt Sushila
- b. in an independent apartment
- c. in a hostel
- d. in a hotel

**Ans.:** a. with Aunt Sushila

**8. “They did not voice their fears”. Who does the word ‘they’ stand for?**

- a. doctors
- b. friends
- c. family members
- d. neighbours

**Ans.:** c. family members

**9. The great wizard of music, who played Tabla with Pandit Ravi Shankar was .....**

- a. Ustad Allah Rakha
- b. Zakir Hussain
- c. Amjad Alik Khan
- d. A.R. Rehman

**Ans.:** a. Ustad Allah Rakha

**10. “Suddenly a daring thought came to her” What was the daring thought?**

- a. ask music maestros to play for her brother in her house
- b. to take Ananth to the music concert
- c. to take Ananth to cancer hospital
- d. to go to the concert with her father

**Ans.:** a. ask music maestros to play for her brother in her house

**11. ‘He actually raised himself up without help’ she said with a catch in her throat. The underlined phrase shows that**

- a. she had cold and cough
- b. someone had caught her by the throat
- c. she was filled with grief
- d. she had tied something round her throat

**Ans.:** c. she was filled with grief

**12. “You know he needs all the sleep and rest he can get” Smita’s mother said this because the boy .....**

- a. had worked all night
- b. had just finished his examination
- c. had come back from a long trip
- d. was very ill and weak

**Ans.:** d. was very ill and weak

**13. “Take him home. Give him the things he likes” The doctors said this because .....**

- a. Anant had been completely cured
- b. they knew he had not many days to live
- c. there were too many patients in the hospital
- d. Anant gave them too much trouble

**Ans.:** b. they knew he had not many days to live

**14. “They had come with high hopes”. Their hopes were that .....**

- a. they could get ticket to the concert
- b. Pandit Ravi Shankar would come to their house
- c. the doctors would be able to cure Anant
- d. they could stay with Aunt Sushila

**Ans.:** c. the doctors would be able to cure Anant

**15. ‘You must not bother him with such a request’. The request was .....**

- a. requesting Ravi Shankar to come to her house and play Sitar for Ananth
- b. requesting the doctors to treat Ananth
- c. requesting father to take Ananth to the concert
- d. requesting aunt Sushila to allow them to stay in her house

**Ans.:** a. requesting Ravi Shankar to come to her house and play Sitar for Ananth

**16. “We perform for the boy’ who said this?**

- a. Ustad Allah Rakha
- b. Pandit Ravi Shankar
- c. Mustachioed man
- d. Organizer

**Ans.:** b. Pandit Ravi Shankar

**II. Answer the following questions in two or three sentences each:**

**1. Why did Smitha get excited after reading the newspaper?**

**Ans.:** Smitha got excited after reading the newspaper because it had the news of Pandit Ravi Shankar’s music concert at the Shanmukhananda Auditorium the next day.

**2. Why do you think the mother cautioned the girl?**

**Ans.:** Smitha’s brother, Anant had been struck with cancer. He was very sick and was lying on the bed. So the mother cautioned Smitha not to disturb Ananth.

**3. Why did Smita’s family move to Bombay?**

**Ans.:** Smita's brother Ananth was suffering from cancer. They moved to Bombay from their native town Gaganpur, so that he could be treated at the cancer hospital in the city.

**4. For a moment, Smitha had forgotten something. What was it?**

**Ans.:** For a moment, Smitha had forgotten that Ananth was very ill and not in a position to go to the concert.

**5. In what way was the truth frightening to Smitha?**

**Ans.:** Though Smitha and her family had pretended Anant would get well, she had known that Anant was going to die of cancer. This was frightening to Smitha.

**6. Do you consider Anant a talented boy? Justify your answer.**

**Ans.:** Yes, Anant was a talented boy. He was the best table – tennis player in the school and the fastest runner. He was learning to play the Sitar and was already able to compose his own tunes.

**7. “They had come with high hopes”, what hopes did Anant’s parents have?**

**Ans.:** Anant's parents had high hopes in the miracles of modern science. They thought that he would be cured. Then he could talk and run again and hoped that he would become a great sitarist one day.

**8. Aunt Sushila was a generous lady. How would you justify this statement?**

**Ans.:** Whenever Smita's family came to Bombay for Anant's treatment they stayed in Aunt Sushila's house. Her apartment was small but there was always room for them. By this we can say that Aunt Sushila was a generous lady.

**9. What did the doctors say to Anant’s parents? Were they words of hope or words of despair?**

**Ans.:** The doctors asked Anant's parents to take him home and give him whatever he liked. They were the words of despair because his parents realized that he had not many days to live.

**10. What was the chance of a lifetime for Ananth?**

**Ans.:** Ananth was a music lover and was also learning to play sitar. Listening to Sitar maestro's music and attend his concert was the chance of lifetime for Anant.

**11. What was the daring thought that came to Smita?**

**Ans.:** Requesting the music wizard to come home to play Sitar for Anant was the daring thought that came to Smita.

**12. How did Smitha enjoy the concert?**

**Ans.:** Smitha was spellbound by the music. As the first notes came over the air, she felt as if the gates of enchantment and wonder were opening. But every beat of Tabla reminded her of Anant's voice.

**13. Do you think of Response of music maestros was unusual? Justify your answer.**

**Ans.:** No, the response of music maestros was not unusual because any person with good heart and is compassionate towards others sorrows would do the same.

**14. The neighbour's could not believe their eyes. Why do you think they felt like this?**

**Ans.:** The neighbour's could not believe their eyes when they saw music maestros get down from the taxi in front of their blocks because they never expected such famous people to heed to the request of a small girl to fulfill her brother's wish.

**15. Did Pandit Ravi Shankar and Ustad Allah Rakha keep their promise? If yes, how?**

**Ans.:** Yes, Pandit Ravi Shankar and Ustad Allah Rakha kept their promise. Next day they went to Anant's house and played for the boy.

**16. Do you like the ending of the story? Why? If you don't, how would you like to end it?**

**Ans.:** No, because I don't like sad ending. I would like to see Anant getting cured and back to his earlier days like playing table tennis and sitar.

**17. In the course of the story 'The Concert', whom do you consider to be more worried, Smita or Anant?**

**Ans.:** In the story, Smita was more worried than others. Though attending the concert was a chance of lifetime, she could not enjoy it completely because Anant was not with her. She was always thinking how to fulfill Anant's wish.

**III. Read the extracts and answer the questions that follow.**

**1. "You'll wake him up. You know he needs all the sleep and rest he can get"**

a. Who was sleeping?

**Ans.:** Anant was sleeping

b. Why does he need rest?

**Ans.:** Anant was suffering from cancer and had become very weak. So he needed rest.

**2. "We musn't miss the chance"**

a. What chance did the boy not like to miss?

**Ans.:** The boy did not like to miss the chance of attending Pandit Ravishankar's music concert.

b. Why is he so eager to make use of it?

**Ans.:** The boy himself was a sitar player. He was suffering from Cancer and was very ill. He thought he might not get another chance, so he was eager to make use of it.

**3. "Take him home. Give him the things he likes, indulge him".**

- a. Who said the above statement?

**Ans.:** Doctors who were treating Anant.

- b. Why did they say so?

**Ans.:** Anant's condition grew worse with each passing day and the doctors knew that the boy had not many days to live. This made them to say so.

**4. "A walk in the park might make you feel better".**

- a. Who suggested a walk in the park?

**Ans.:** Aunt Sushila suggested a walk in the park.

- b. How was her mood in the park?

**Ans.:** Smita felt alone in the midst of people who were walking, running, playing etc. She was lost in her thoughts.

**5. 'But they did not voice their fears'**

- a. What did Anant's parents fear?

**Ans.:** Anant's parents feared that the boy had not many days to live.

- b. How did they behave towards him?

**Ans.:** They laughed, talked and surrounded Anant with whatever made him happy. They fulfilled his every need.

**6. 'Panditji is a busy man. You must not bother him with such requests'**

- a. Who was bothering Panditji?

**Ans. :** Smitha

- b. What was the request made?

**Ans.:** The request was made to Pandit Ravishankar to come to the house and play for Anant.

**7. They could not believe their eyes. 'It is ..... It's not possible?' they said.**

- a. Who could not believe their eyes?

**Ans.:** Neighbours could not believe their eyes

- b. Why couldn't they believe their eyes?

**Ans.:** They couldn't believe their eyes because Pandit Ravishankar and Ustad Allah Rakha came to Aunt Sushila's house to play for Anant.

**8. 'Enjoy yourself, lucky you!'**

- a. Who is considered as lucky?

**Ans.:** Smitha is considered as lucky

b. Why is she lucky?

**Ans.:** She is lucky because she was going to attend the music concert of Pandit Ravi Shankar, with her father. But Ananth could not go because of his ill health.

**9. “No, how can I? We’ve always done things together”.**

a. Who has done the things together?

**Ans.:** Anant and Smitha

b. Why is it not possible now?

**Ans.:** It was not possible now because Anant had cancer and was confined to bed. He could not go anywhere with Smitha.

**IV. Answer the following questions in a paragraph of 8-10 sentences each:**

**1. Why do you think that Smitha and Ravi Shankar deserve the appreciation of readers?**

**Ans. :** Smitha could not take Anant with her to the concert because he was suffering from cancer. She went to the concert with her father and enjoyed Ravi Shankar’s recital. She also wanted her brother to listen to Ravi Shankar’s music. So, she approached Ravi Shankar and told all about Anant and requested him to come to his house and play sitar. No one could imagine that a great musician like Ravi Shankar would agree to her request. But he along with tabla maestro Ustad Allah Rakha played for Anant. Thus Smitha and Ravi Shankar deserve our appreciation.

**2. ‘Where there is will, there is way’. How is this saying apt for Smita?**

**Ans.:** Smita and Anant had done things together. Now Anant was ill and could not accompany Smita to the music concert. Instead at sitting home and repenting for the loss, she went to the concert with her father. She also gathered courage to request Panditji to come to her house and play for Anant. To everyone’s surprise maestros agreed to her request and came to her house and played for him. It was unbelievable for everyone. Thus we can justify that ‘Where there is will, there is way’ is apt for Smita.

\*\*\*\*\*

Unit - 5  
**JAZZ POEM TWO**

**I Four alternatives are given for each of the following questions/incomplete statements. Write the correct or the most appropriate answer in the space provided**

**1. “ ..... his run-down shoes have paper in them”. This suggests the Jazz player .....**

- a. had come running
- b. was poor
- c. was a good sportsman
- d. kept his notes in his shoes

**Ans. b. was poor**

**2. “ ..... his wrinkled old face so,  
Full of the weariness of living”**

**These lines shows that the Jazz player was .....**

- a. an old man full of life
- b. old but cheerful
- c. an old man tired of living
- d. tired of his wrinkles

**Ans. c. an old tired of living**

**3. The musical instrument mentioned in the poem ‘Jazz Poem Two’ is .....**

- a. flute
- b. tabla
- c. saxophone
- d. Sitar

**Ans. : c. Saxophone**

**4. “ ..... he is no longer a man, no not even a Black man”. What else is he? ....**

- a. a preacher
- b. a bird
- c. a white man
- d. an ancient mariner

**Ans. : a bird**

**5. “ ..... now preaching it with words of screaming notes and chords”. These lines suggests that the Jazz player .....**

- a. was shouting very loudly
- b. had an old Saxophone

- c. wanted to be louder than other players
- d. wanted to convey a message through his music

**Ans. : d. wanted to convey a message through his music**

**6. “there he stands, see?**

**Like a black Ancient Mariner ..... “**

**Name the figure of speech in the above sentence .....**

- a. personification
- b. simile
- c. metaphor
- d. paradox

**II. Answer the following questions in a word/phrase or a sentence each :**

**1. What is Jazz player is compared to in the two lines of the poem?**

**Ans. :** Jazz player compared to a black Ancient Mariner

**2. Why do you think the Jazz player keeps his head down?**

**Ans :** Jazz player keeps his head down because his life his full of wearies.

**3. What does each wrinkle on the Jazz players face show?**

**Ans.:** Each Wrinkle on the face of the Jazz player’s face shows pain

**4. Why do you think the Jazz player has been sent here?**

**Ans.:** Jazz player has been sent here to spread the message of God.

**5. What is the Jazz player supposed to be when he plays music?**

**Ans. :** Jazz player is supposed to be a bird when he plays music.

**6. What did the Jazz player have in his shoes?**

**Ans.:** The Jazz player had paper in his shoes.

**III Read the extracts and answer the questions that follow:**

1. “his run down shoes have  
paper in them and his  
rough unshaven face shows  
pain in each wrinkle”

- a. why do the shoes have paper in them?

**Ans.:** The Jazz player is a poor man this shoes are old and torn and he has put paper in them to be able to wear them.

- b. What does the description of the face suggest?

**Ans.:** The Jazz player's face is unshaven which suggests that he does not care for his appearance. He has led a hard life so his face in wrinkled.

2. **“gently he lifts it now  
To parted lips, see? To  
tell all the world that  
he is a Black man”**

- a. What does he lift?

**Ans.:** He lifted an old saxophone.

- b. What message does he want to convey?

**Ans.:** Through his music, he wishes to convey the message of God to his listeners.

3. **“he is no longer a man. no not even a Black man. but (Yeah!)  
A Bird”**

- a. **When is he no longer man?**

**Ans.:** As the Jazz player begins to play on his Saxophone he is a changed man.

- b. **What do these lines suggest?**

**Ans.** The Jazz player may be a poor old man, but when he plays he seems to go higher and higher like a bird. He can capture hearts through his music.

#### **IV Answer the following questions in two or three sentences:**

1. **Give a short description of the Jazz player**

**Ans. :** The Jazz player has wrinkled old face. He is unshaven and has a tired look. He wears a faded blue shirt, old necktie and jacket. His shoes too are old and worn out.

2. **Why do you think the Jazz player keeps her head down?**

**Ans. :** The Jazz player is a poor, old man. He has led a hard life. He is tired and keeps his head down.

3. **The word ‘old’ has been repeated several times in the first two stanzas.**

**Ans. :** Everything about the man is old his face, his clothes and his shoes. He appears to be a pathetic figure.

**4. What message does the Jazz player want to convey?**

**Ans.:** The Jazz player wants to convey to the world that he is Black man who can draw people towards him through his music.

**5. How does the Jazz player change as he plays on the saxophone?**

**Ans.:** As the Jazz player starts to play on the Saxophone he is no longer an old Black man. He produces wonderful music and appears to be like a bird flying higher and higher.

**6. How has the Jazz player held his instrument?**

**Ans.:** The Jazz player has held his instrument across his chest. It is supported by a wire coat hanger from his neck.

**7. 'He is no longer a man' says the poet. Who else is he supposed to be if he is no longer a man?**

**Ans.:** The Jazz player forgets everything when he plays the music to preach the world. At that moment he feels like a bird which gathers his wings and flies higher and higher.

**V Answer the following in 8-10 sentences each.**

**1. Write the substance of the poem 'Jazz Poem Two'.**

**Ans:** An old Jazz musician is standing like a Black Ancient mariner. His old face is wrinkled and weary. His faded blue shirt has turned dark with sweat. Blue shirt has turned dark with sweat. His stomach is hanging loosely. His jacket is worn out and his necktie is undone and dropping loosely over the jacket. His shoes are torn and are stuffed with paper to cover the holes. His rough unshaven face shows pain.

He stands alone head down, eyes closed and ears perked. An old saxophone hangs across his chest supported from his neck by a wire coat hanger. He gently lifts the saxophone to the parted lips. But once he starts playing music he is no longer a Black man but a bird which gathers his wings and flies high and higher. He seems to be spreading the message of God through his music.

**2. Describe the physical appearance of Jazz? What special skill did he have?**

**Ans. :** The Jazz player has a rough unshaven face and sagging stomach. He wears a faded blue shirt, a loose necktie and an old jacket. His shoes are run down. Across his chest is an old alto saxophone supported from his neck by a wire coat hanger. The Jazz player at first has a weary expression on his

face. He keeps his head down and appears lifeless. When it is his turn to play, he lifts the saxophone to his lips, suddenly, he is filled with a new life. He is no longer an ordinary man. He is like a bird flying higher and higher, totally lost in the beautiful music he produces.

\*\*\*\*\*

Unit - 6  
**THE DISCOVERY**

**I. Four alternatives are given. Choose the best alternatives: (MCQ)**

**1. “The Santa Maria will be lighter for his carcass”. These words were said by**

- |          |                   |
|----------|-------------------|
| a. Diego | b. Francisco      |
| c. Pedro | d. Guillermo Ires |

**Ans.: d. Guillermo Ires**

**2. “A Good sailor knows his place”, says Columbus to Diego. This statement is**

- |                            |                        |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| a. a piece of advice       | b. an indirect command |
| c. an expression of sorrow | d. a cry of horror     |

**Ans.: b. an indirect command**

**3. Columbus feels that his worst enemy is**

- |                            |                     |
|----------------------------|---------------------|
| a. the angry sea           | b. his vision       |
| c. his uncontrolled tongue | d. the sailors song |

**Ans.: c. his uncontrolled tongue**

**4. The dialogue between Columbus and Pedro in section 2 reveals this train of Columbus.**

- |                              |                 |
|------------------------------|-----------------|
| a. dictatorial attitude      | b. quick temper |
| c. hatred towards the seamen | d. selfishness  |

**Ans.: b. quick temper**

**5. Pepe is always eager to say that he is ever ..... to Columbus**

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| a. loyal       | b. disobedient |
| c. disloyal d. | unfaithful     |

**Ans.: a. loyal**

**6. ‘Who’s to put him in irons?’ challenges Guillermo.**

**The person meant by ‘him’ in this context is:**

- a. Guillermo
- b. The first man to move towards Columbus
- c. Columbus
- d. The first man who challenged Columbus

**Ans.: a. Guillermo**

**7. Columbus set out from Spain to**

- a. for a long holiday
- b. to become a new world
- c. to discover a new world
- d. to make new friends

**Ans.: c. to discover a new world**

**8. Columbus said that he had discovered one thing. It was**

- a. there were no butts to discipline
- b. A good sailor knows his place
- c. God's will was his will
- d. A man with a vision has to follow it alone.

**Ans.: d. A man with a vision has to follow it alone**

**9. "Your best cannot be bettered", says Columbus. This implies that**

- a. No one is perfect at anytime
- b. There is always scope for improvement
- c. Once we reach the best, we cannot improve
- d. Columbus is not totally happy with Francisco

**Ans.: d. Columbus is not totally happy with Francisco**

**10. 'I will perform it myself', says Columbus. What does 'it' mean here?**

- a. To navigate the ship forward
- b. To put Guillermo Ires in irons.
- c. To turn back the helps towards Spain
- d. To stop the seamen singing

**Ans.: b. To put Guillermo Ires in Irons**

**11. After 'a perceptible Pause', who grows more mutinous than others?**

- a. Pedro
- b. Guillermo
- c. Diego
- d. Francisco

**Ans.: c. Diego**

**12. "Everybody doubts ..... except me" says .....**

- a. pearo
- b. pepe
- c. Diego
- d. Juan Pation

**Ans.: b. pepe**

**13. Columbus says, “would God important desire to solve mystery and he doesn’t provide solutions? The mood of Columbus in saying this.**

- a. Desperate
- b. Trust/Faith in God
- c. Angry
- d. Helplessness

**Ans.: b. Trust/faith in God**

**14. The seamen were desperate because**

- a. they were tired and wanted to return to their homes and families
- b. there was a storm in the sea
- c. they were tortured by the captain
- d. the food in the ship was exhausted.

**Ans.: a. they were tired and wanted to return to their homes and families.**

**15. “Your duty is to obey me as mine is to obey the Royal Sovereigns of Spain who sent me”. These words prove that**

- a. Columbus was very loyal to the king and queen.
- b. Columbus was mutinous
- c. Columbus was reluctant
- d. Columbus was cruel

**Ans.: a. Columbus was very loyal to the king and queen.**

**II. Answer the following questions in two or three sentences each:**

**1. What is termed as his worst enemy by Columbus?**

**Ans.:** Columbus feels that his uncontrolled tongue is his worst enemy.

**2. Give a short description of the appearance of Columbus.**

**Ans.:** Columbus was a tall, well build man of forty six. His hair was prematurely white, fair complexion and ruddy.

**3. Complete the table of physical features of Columbus described in the text.**

<b>Ans.</b> Physique	Tall, well built
Age	forty six
Hair	Prematurely white
Complexion	fair
Face ruddy,	repose

**4. The play begins with a song. What mood does this convey?**

**Ans.:** The seamen who had been away from home for a long time had not sighted land. The song shows that the seamen were desperate.

**5. 'There are limits to patience', says Diego. What does this suggest about Digo's state of mind?**

**Ans.:** Diego along with the seamen were tired of the voyage and wanted to return home, but Columbus was firm and would not give up. So Digo desperately said these words.

**6. Who do you think has the lives of fifty in his hands? How?**

**Ans.:** Christopher Columbus had the lives of fifty seamen in his hands. He was their captain. The seamen were tired and wanted to return home but Columbus was firm and would not give up.

**7. What does Columbus feel his worst enemy? Why do you think he feel so?**

**Ans.:** Columbus feels that his uncontrolled tongue is his worst enemy. Columbus was a man who lost his temper soon and was easily irritated. He would often speak rudely to his men which made them angry towards him.

**8. 'Mutiny is an ugly word', says Diego. Is mutiny an ugly word? If so, why?**

**Ans.:** Yes, Because mutiny leads to destruction. Mutiny curbs the development of determination, tolerance and faith in God.

**9. How does Pedro try to defend the drunken seamen? Was he right in defending them?**

**Ans.:** Pedro defending that the drunken seamen were simple men and wanted to relax by drinking as they did not have the same vision as Columbus.

Pedro was not right in defending the seamen because their drinking was leading to unruly behavior.

**10. Columbus was always furious when he heard the seamen's song. Why did it make him angry?**

**Ans.:** The song expressed the seamen's love for drinking which was a sign of their deep discontent. Columbus was angry because they did not understand what he was trying to achieve.

**11. Columbus feels that whatever he does, it is God's will. What will of God does he like to fulfill through this venture?**

**Ans.:** Columbus felt that it was the will of God that he should discover a new world which would bring wealth to his country and help them to bring new souls on the path to God.

**12. Columbus says, "Would God implant desire to solve mystery and he doesn't provide solutions?" Identify the mood of Columbus in saying this?**

**Ans.:** Columbus had been sailing for many days not yet sighted land. His men were turning against him. But Columbus felt that if God had sent him he would surely help him find a way. These words shows that he had faith in God.

**13. Whose company did Pepe prefer? What was the reason for this?**

**Ans.:** Pepe preferred to be in the company of Columbus because he had faith in Columbus vision.

**14. Pepe warns Columbus about some people. Who are they?**

**Ans.:** Pepe warns Columbus about the other sailors because they drank too much and were going against Columbus.

**15. How did the seamen show their anger towards Columbus?**

**Ans.:** The seamen rushed in an angry mass towards Columbus growling like wild animals.

**16. "Discipline knows no buts" what made Columbus say this?**

**Ans.:** Columbus wanted to punish Guillermo Ires, who had disobeyed Columbus. So he ordered that Guillermo should be brought to him. Francisco tried to protest, against this. Columbus then said these words.

**17. Why do the Crewmates of Columbus feel desperate?**

**Ans.:** After sailing for so many days, Columbus and his men could not sight a land. They were tired and wanted to return to their homes and families. But Columbus would not give up. So they were desperate.

**18. 'I will perform it myself', says Columbus. What does 'it' mean here?**

**Ans.:** 'It' means to put him in irons for the first man to move towards Columbs.

**19. 'Devil's track to nowhere', says Guillermo. What does this suggest about the thinking of the seamen?**

**Ans.:** The seamen felt that Columbus was perhaps possessed by the Devil. He was risking their lives and taking them on a voyage which would take them nowhere.

**20. How did Pepe prove his loyalty to Columbus?**

**Ans.:** Pepe was the only person who had faith in Columbus and tried to warn him about how desperate the others had become. When the seamen rushed to kill Columbus, Pepe stood before them with his arms spread out and told them that they would have to kill him first. His loyalty put the others to shame.

**21. “This is a voyage of discovery”. What had Columbus set out to discover?**

**Ans.:** Columbus had set out to discover a new world, where he would find new wealth and a new territory for his king and queen to rule.

**22. According to Columbus, what was the one thing that he had discovered?**

**Ans.:** Columbus said that he had discovered one thing – that if a man had a vision, he must follow it alone. He should not expect loyalty, friendship, discipline or obedience from others.

**23. Pepe says, “Everybody doubts ..... except me”. Why do you think he is an exception.**

**Ans.:** Because Pepe was loyal to his captain and believed that the captain would reach his destiny when the other seamen wanted to attack him with anger.

**24. Pep excitedly declares that he is still loyal to the leaders what effect does it have on others like Juan and Guillermo?**

**Ans.:** Pepe was the only one who had the faith that Columbus would discover a new world. But the other sailors like Juan and Guillermo rebelled against him and even tried to attack him and abused Pepe when he came forward to save Columbus from being attacked.

**III Read each of the following extracts and answers the questions given below.**

**1. “A good sailor knows his place” says Columbus to Diego**

- a. Was Columbus giving to Diego a piece of advice or was it an indirect command? Give reason for your choice.

**Ans.:** Columbus wanted to point out to Diego that he had no right to be on the quarter deck. It is an indirect command.

- b. What was ‘Diego’s reaction?

**Ans.:** Diego tried to suppress his anger and with a scowl goes off from there.

**2. “The Santa Maria will be lighter for his carcass”.**

- a. Whose words was Pepe quoting here?

**Ans.:** Pepe was quoting the words of Guillermo Ires.

- b. What do the words reveal about the person who said them?

**Ans:** These words show that the speaker was so upset with Columbus that he wished he was dead.

**3. “Once clear of the Devil’s track to nowhere”, we’ll below our way back home”.**

- a. What does ‘Devil’s track to nowhere’ suggest about the thinking of the seamen?

**Ans.:** The seamen felt that Columbus was perhaps possessed by the Devil. He was risking their lives and taking them on a voyage which would take them nowhere.

- b. How did they prove to be wrong?

**Ans.:** Very soon, land was sighted and a New World was discovered. So they proved to be wrong.

**4. “Your duty is to obey me as mine is to obey the Royal Sovereigns of Spain who sent me’.**

- a. When did Columbus say these words to Guillermo?

**Ans.:** Guillermo rebelled against Columbus and demanded that they should give up their search for a new land.

- b. What do these words prove?

**Ans.:** These words prove that Columbus was not only a strong leader but was also loyal and obedient towards his king and queen.

**5. “Why should one man have lives of fifty in his hands?”**

- a. Who is the speaker?

**Ans.:** Diego said these words to Pedro

- b. What does the speaker mean?

**Ans.:** Diego and other seamen were becoming impatient and they wanted to return home, but Columbus was not ready to do so. Diego said these words meaning that Columbus had no right to spoil their lives.

**6. “Mutiny is an ugly word, Sir”**

- a. Why did the speaker say these words?

**Ans.:** Diego said these words in reply when Pedro asked him whether he was thinking of rebelling against Columbus.

- b. In what way the word is ugly?

**Ans.:** The word is ugly because Mutiny' is a deed which leads to destruction.

**7. "Discipline knows no buts" says Columbus**

- a. When did Columbus say this?

**Ans.:** Columbus said these words to Francisco. He asked Francisco to bring Guillermo Ires to him for speaking against him. Francisco hesitated to obey his order.

- b. What did Columbus mean to say by these words?

**Ans. :** Columbus meant that one should not hesitate to enforce discipline.

**8. "I have discovered that when a man is given a version he must follow it along"**

- a. What does these words show about the speaker?

**Ans.:** Columbus said these words which show his disappointment that no one was ready to help him reach his goal.

- b. Why did the speaker say so?

**Ans.:** Columbus said this to Pepe. When Columbus had the dream to discover a New World, but his sailors rebelled against him and even tried to attack him

**9. Pepe said, "Captain, be careful sometimes they are desperate"**

- a. Why did Pepe say these words?

**Ans.:** Pepe tried to warn Columbus that these could be danger from them anytime

- b. Why were they desperate?

**Ans.:** Pepe was the only one who had the faith that Columbus would discover a new world and the other seamen were against Columbus in desperate.

**10. "What! does that child stand between me and death?" said Columbus.**

- a. When did Columbus say this?

**Ans.:** When Columbus hears Pepe saying that he had to be killed first.

- b. What had the child done?

**Ans.:** The child (Pepe) stood in front of Columbus to protect him from being attacked by the seamen.

**IV Answer the following questions in a paragraph of 8-10 sentences.**

- 1. “Columbus had the will power and had the strength to face obstacles” Justify your answer.**

**Ans.:** Columbus and his crew left Spain to discover the new world. He and his men sailed for a long time but did not come across the trace of any land. The sailors were fed up. They wanted to go back to their places. They asked Columbus to turn the ship back to their country. When Columbus asked them to wait for a few days, the crew became angry. The sailors thought of revolting and even murdering Columbus. One of the sailors rushed towards Columbus to murder him, Pepe another sailor intervened and saved the life of Columbus. Columbus had a lot of patience and encouraged his sailors not to become desperate.

After a few days Columbus saw a light faintly flickering raising up and down. The land he discovered was west Indies. The crew jumped with joy.

- 2. Swami Vivekananda says, “Purity Patience and Perservance are the essentials to success – And above all Love”. Does Columbus posses all these qualities? Justify.**

**Ans.:** Columbus wanted to discover a new world which would make his country, king and queen rich. He had faith in God and there was purity in his intentions. All his men wanted to give up, but he had patience and he persevered till he reached his goal. He did not lost heart. Columbus had love – love for his country. Love for God. His good qualities finally lead him to success.

- 3. How was the excitement of finding a new land expressed by different characters at the end of the play?**

**Ans.:** Columbus pointed out a light, faintly flickering, which rises up and down. Then Pedro, with a wild shout said Glory by to God and the sea men with joy and excitement cried a light, land! Land! and blessed mother of God.

\*\*\*\*\*

Unit - 6  
**BALLAD OF THE TEMPEST**

**I. Four alternatives are given choose the best alternatives: (MCQ)**

**1. 'Not a soul would dare to sleep' The figure of speech used here is**

- |             |                    |
|-------------|--------------------|
| a. metaphor | b. personification |
| c. simile   | d. synecdoche      |

**Ans. : d. synecdoche**

**2. A shelter for ships is known as**

- |          |           |    |
|----------|-----------|----|
| a. cabin | b. mast   | c. |
| harbour  | d. anchor |    |

**Ans.: c. harbour**

**3. 'There we kissed the little maiden' The sailors did this because**

- a. she was a pretty little girl
- b. they wanted to say good bye
- c. she was the captain's daughter
- d. she filled their hearts with hope.

**Ans. : d. she filled their hearts with hope**

**4. The captain's daughter had faith that**

- a. winter should soon end
- b. god would protect them
- c. her father could save the ship
- d. she could stop the storm

**Ans.: b. god would protect them**

**5. While the hungry sea was roaring. The figure of speech employed here is**

- |                    |               |
|--------------------|---------------|
| a. simile          | b. metaphor   |
| c. personification | d. Synecdoche |

**Ans. : c. personification**

**6. And the breakers talked with death. The figure of speech here is**

- |             |                    |
|-------------|--------------------|
| a. Metaphor | b. synecdoche      |
| c. simile   | d. personification |

**Ans.: d. personification**

**II. Answer the following questions in a word/phrase (VSA)**

**1. Why could not the sailors sleep?**

**Ans. :** Because the sailors were afraid that the storm would destroy the ship.

**2. Who were crowded in the cabin?**

**Ans. :** The sailors were crowded in the cabin

**3. What is a fearful thing according to the poet James T. Fields?**

**Ans. :** According to the poet, it is a fearful thing to be hit by a violent storm at sea in winter.

**4. Why was the little maiden kissed?**

**Ans.:** Because the little girl brought back hope to the sailors by saying that God would protect them.

**III. Answer the following in 2—3 sentences each:**

**1. Usually storms are formed in the deep sea. What precaution have the sailors got to take before voyage?**

**Ans.:** Before setting out on a voyage, sailors have to make sure that the ship is strong enough to withstand any storm at sea. They have to be well stocked with food and water. They need life saving jackets and be sturdy swimmers.

**2. When the captain shouted. 'We are lost'. How did his daughter react?**

**Ans.:** His daughter held his hand and gently asked if God protected us on land would he not protect us when they are on the ocean.

**3. The speaker and his crew-mates sat in darkness and prayed. What did they hear?**

**Ans.:** They heard the storm raging at sea, then the sailors sat in the darkness and prayed; The captain staggered down the stairs and shouted 'we are lost'.

4. **The crew mates kissed the maiden and spoke in better cheers. What made them feel cheerful?**

**Ans.:** The little girl asked her father if God protected them on land. Would he not protect them on the sea. Her faith in God brought hope to the sailors and they kissed her in joy.

5. **‘A ship is always safe at the shore, but it was not built for that’ what does this mean?**

**Ans.:** A ship is built to take people and goods across the seas. If it just stays on the shore it will no doubt be unharmed, but would be of no use to anyone.

6. **‘Tis a fearful thing in winter. What is referred to as a fearful thing in winter?**

**Ans.:** To be caught in a fierce storm at sea in winter is the fearful thing.

7. **What would be the condition in the deep sea during winter on the sea?**

**Ans.:** The winds would be icy cold and the water too would be freezing.

8. **The poet uses the phrase ‘the hungry sea’. What can the reader imagine from this?**

**Ans.:** The poet personifies the sea hungry because when the storm is very severe, the huge waves will drown the ship and sailors as if the sea is very hungry.

#### **IV Read the extract and answer the questions that follow.**

1. **‘We were crowded in the cabin, Not a soul would dare to sleep’**

- a. Who does the word ‘we’ refer to here?

**Ans.:** ‘We’ refer to the sailors.

- b. Not a soul would dare to sleep-why was it so?

**Ans.:** Because the sailors were afraid that the storm would destroy the ship and their lives.

2. **‘T is a fearful thing in winter’  
To be shattered by the blast”**

- a. What is to as a ‘fearful thing’?

**Ans.:** To be caught in a fierce storm at sea in winter is the fearful thing.

- b. How did it affect the sailors?

**Ans. :** The sailors lay awake saying a silent prayer in the dark.

**3. “We are lost!” the captain shouted**

- a. Why did the captain say this?

**Ans.:** The storm was very fierce and the captain feared that the ship would be torn apart any moment.

- b. How did his daughter react to the situation?

**Ans.:** His daughter remained calm. Holding her father’s hand she asked if God could protect them on land would he not protect them on sea.

**4. “Then we kissed the little maiden And we spoke in better cheer”**

- a. Who was the little maiden?

**Ans.:** The little maiden was the captain’s daughter.

- b. Why did they kiss her?

**Ans.:** The little girl brought back hope to the sailors by saying that God would protect them. So, they kissed her.

**5. “Isn’t God upon the ocean,  
Just the same as on the land?”**

- a. When did the speaker say these words?

**Ans.:** When the captain feared the ship was caught in the storm, he shouted ‘we are lost!’ then the captain’s daughter said these words.

- b. What does these words show the attitude of the speaker?

**Ans.:** Faith in God.

**V. Answer the following in 8-10 sentences:**

**1. Write in your own words the substance of the poem ‘Ballad of the Tempest’**

**Ans.:** It was dark, stormy night in winter a ship was out at sea. Huge waves dashed against the ship and the roar of the sea filled the sailors with fear. They crowded together in one cabin. Even the bravest among them could not sleep. They just sat in the darkness and prayed. As the storm continued, the captain too gave up hope and said that nothing could save them. At that point, the captain’s little daughter held his hand and quietly asked if God protected them on sea. Her faith in God filled the sailors with a new hope. By morning, the storm cleared and they reached harbour safely.

**VI. Quote from memory (8 lines)****BALLAD OF THE TEMPEST**

We were crowded in the cabin,  
Not a should would dare to sleep,  
It was midnight on the waters,  
And a storm was on the deep.  
Tis a fearful thing in winter  
To be shattered by the blast,  
And to hear the rattling trumpet  
Thunder, "Cut away the mast!"  
So we shuddered there in silence, -  
For the stoutest held his breath,  
While the hungry sea was roaring  
And the breakers talked with death  
As thus we sat in darkness  
Each one busy with his prayers,  
"we are lost!" the captain shouted,  
As he staggered down the stairs .....

But his little daughter whispered,  
As she took his icy hand,  
"Isn't God upon the ocean,  
Just the same as on the land?"  
Then we kissed the little maiden,  
And we spoke in better cheer,  
And we anchored safe in harbour  
When the morn was shining clear.

\*\*\*\*\*



6. **Satish avoided going out to play because .....**

- a. children in the neighborhood teased and taunted him
- b. he was very weak to play
- c. he did not have anyone to play with
- d. doctor had advised him not to go out

**Ans. a. children in the neighborhood teased and taunted him**

7. **The bird's eyes kept moving here and there. Its body was ready for flight. This shows that the bird .....**

- a. was afraid of falling
- b. was full of energy
- c. liked Satish
- d. wanted to be painted

**Ans. b. was full of energy**

8. **Satish's father felt that artists .....**

- a. do not make much money
- b. cannot read and write
- c. are lazy and waste time
- d. make too much money

**Ans. a. do not make much money**

9. **After the unsuccessful expedition to the schools, Satish became very moody. The word 'expedition' in the above sentence means .....**

- a. journey
- b. visit
- c. mountaineering
- d. painting

**Ans. b. visit**

10. **Satish expressed his gratitude to his father by .....**

- a. telling 'thank you'
- b. hugging him tightly
- c. giving him a gift
- d. shaking hands with him

**Ans. b. hugging him tightly**

**II. Answer the following question in 2-3 sentences each:**

1. **Why was Satish confined to bed? What was the worst thing for him? Why was it so?**

**Ans.:** After the accident, Satish's legs became very weak, requiring several operations. He frequently suffered from bouts of fever and infections of the ear. So he was confined to bed. He was becoming deaf and he could not bear the silence.

**2. How did Satish meet with an accident?**

**Ans. :** On a holiday in Kashmir, Satish went hiking with his father and brother while crossing a rickety bridge over some rapids, his foot slipped and he fell into the rapids.

**3. Satish didn't want to go to a new school. What was the reason?**

**Ans.:** Satish didn't want to go to a new school where he couldn't talk to the other children, where everyone would make fun of his deafness.

**4. How did Satish's brother Inder, help him?**

**Ans.:** Inder sat with Satish for hours with him and talked to him, teaching him words and pronunciation. He spend time with him, trying to teach him things/

**5. What did Satish see at the far corner of the garden? Why did it attract him?**

**Ans. :** Satish saw a bird at the far corner of the garden. Its restless energy attracted him.

**6. Many schools refused to take in Satish. How did it affect him?**

**Ans.:** Satish became moody and could not talk freely with others. He began to avoid going out to play with the other children.

**7. What effect did the books he read have on Satish?**

**Ans.:** The books that Satish read was meant for adults. That made him feel depressed and left a deep impression upon his sensitive mind. His own world is comfortable in comparison to the world outside.

**8. Describe the bird in the garden, which attracted Satish?**

**Ans. :** The bird had a long tail and black crest. It was restless and full of energy. Its eyes moved here and there and its whole body seemed ever ready to fly.

**9. How did the beautiful bird inspire Satish?**

**Ans.:** Satish stared at the bird for a long time. After it flew away he took out his note book and pencil and made a sketch of the bird. He soon began to spend a lot of time making different sketches.

**10. Why was Satish's father against drawing?**

**Ans.:** Satish's father felt that artists do not make much money. He wanted a bright future for his son. He thought that it is possible only by studying hard. He thought drawing as waste of time.

**11. Satish's parents were both his well-wishers. But each cared for him in a different way. How?**

**Ans.:** Satish's father was optimistic and hoped that Satish's hearing would come back. Instead of wasting time on drawing, he wanted Satish to study.

Satish's mother did not have the hope that he would recover. She was happy that her son had found good pass time in drawing and she did not want to stop him.

**12. Satish's father accepted that his son's destiny lay in canvas and paint. What did he promise to do? How did Satish express his gratitude?**

**Ans.:** Satish's father promised to find out the best school of arts so that Satish could make his life in the field of his choice. Satish's eyes filled with tears and he hugged his father tightly.

**13. Do you think the school you are studying should admit students with disabilities of hearing? Give reasons.**

**Ans. :** Yes, my school should admit students with disabilities of hearing because everybody cannot afford to go to special school. Going to special school may create inferiority complex in them.

**14. How can you say that Satish became popular all over the world?**

**Ans.:** Satish Gujral is among the foremost artists in India, excelling in painting, sculpture and architecture.

**III Read each of the following extracts and answer the questions given below.**

**1. "We will have to look for a new school", his father said**

- a. why did Satish's father have to look for a new school?

**Ans.:** Due to his frequent absence and hearing problem, the school Satish was attending, informed his father that they could not keep him. So, Satish's father had to look for a new school.

- b. Satish was unhappy about this. What was the reason?

**Ans.:** Satish did not want to go to a school where he couldn't talk to other children and where they would make fun of his deafness.

**2. "You can learn a great deal of things just by reading"**

- a. Why do you think Satish's father encouraged him to read?

**Ans.:** To get on in life, Satish's father wanted Satish to read.

- b. How did reading influence Satish?

**Ans.:** As Satish began to read, it was as if a whole world opened out to him. He realized that there were others who had suffered more than him.

**3. “This is an idle pass time. You would do better to read and get some knowledge”.**

- a. What is an idle pass time according to the above statement?

**Ans.:** Drawing is an idle pass time according to the above statement.

- b. Why does Satish’s father give more importance to reading?

**Ans.:** Satish’s father thinks that by reading Satish can make something out of his life, To get on in life, one has to read a lot.

**4. “You made do this very badly, don’t you?”**

- a. What do you think made Satish’s father say this?

**Ans.:** Though his father was against it, Satish continued to draw and paint. His father realized that his son had a great love and talent for art.

- b. What did he do soon after leaving the room?

**Ans.:** He bought paints, brushes of all shapes and sizes and several rolls of drawing sheets for Satish.

**5. “You will learn arts and make your life in your chosen field”**

- a. Why did you think made Satish’s father take this decision?

**Ans. :** Though his father was against it, Satish continued to draw and paint. His father realized that his son had a great love and talent for art.

- b. How did Satish react to his father’s decision?

**Ans.:** Satish’s eyes filled with tears. He hugged his father tightly and his heart filled with love for his father.

**IV. Answer the following in 8-10 sentences**

- 1. “Satish Gujral became a great artist’, support this statement mentioning a few of his achievements. OR “Physical disability is no barrier to success to Satish”. Justify.**

**Ans.:** Satish Gujral is accomplished in several art forms like painting, sculpture, architecture and writing. Exhibitions of his works were held in prestigious museums like Museum of modern Art, New York, the Hiroshima collection. Washington and the National Gallery of Modern Art, New Delhi. He

has published four books of his works in the various arts. He was awarded the order of the crown for the best architectural design of the 20<sup>th</sup> century for his design of the Belgian Embassy in New Delhi. He has also been honoured with the Padma Vibushan.

\*\*\*\*\*

Unit - 7  
**THE BLIND BOY**

**I Four alternatives are given. Choose the best alternatives.**

**1. The tone of the speakers is one of**

- |             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| a. surprise | b. curiosity |
| c. sadness  | d. helpless  |

**Ans.: b. curiosity**

**2. “I feel him warm, but how can he  
Or make it day or night”. The ‘him’ here refers to**

- |             |            |
|-------------|------------|
| a. light    | b. the sun |
| c. the moon | d. a bulb  |

**Ans.: b. the sun**

**3. “With heavy sighs I often hear  
you mourn my hapless woe”**

**who is mourning here?**

- |           |                  |
|-----------|------------------|
| a. people | b. the blind boy |
| c. sun    | d. poet          |

**Ans. : a. people**

**4. The word which does not rhyme with ‘woe’ is**

- |         |        |
|---------|--------|
| a. know | b. sow |
| c. cow  | d. sow |

**Ans. : c. cow**

**5. “then let not what I cannot have my cheer of mind destroy”. This implies that the blind boy  
is**

- a. happy though he does not have the blessings of sight

- b. happy not to have the blessings of sight
- c. unhappy because he does not see day and night
- d. jealous of people who have everything

**Ans.: a. happy though he does not have the blessings of the sight.**

**6. Whilst thus I sing, I am a king. The figure of speech used here is**

- a. metaphor
- b. alliteration
- c. personification
- d. irony

**Ans. a. metaphor**

**7. To the blind boy, the blessings of sight is**

- a. a curse
- b. a riddle
- c. a lesson.
- a pain

**Ans. b. a riddle**

**II. Answer the following questions in a word/sentence or a phrase each:**

**1. Who is the voice of the poem?**

**Ans. :** The voice of the poem is of a blind boy

**2. “You mourn my hapless woe”, who is sympathizing with whom?**

**Ans.:** The people are sympathizing with the blind boy

**3. Who do you think is the person addressed as ‘you’ in the poem.**

**Ans.:** The person who is addressed as ‘you’ in the poem is the people.

**4. What a normal person can easily understand is almost a riddle to the blind boy. What is it?**

**Ans. :** How can sun make day and night is the riddle to the blind boy.

**5. What is it that the blind boy cannot enjoy?**

**Ans.:** The blind boy cannot enjoy the blessings of sight.

**6. How do others feel about the blind boy?**

**Ans.:** Others feel sad about the blind boy.

**7. Who makes day and night of the blind boy?**

**Ans.:** The blind boy himself makes his day and night.

**8. How does the blind boy experience the Sun?**

**Ans.:** The blind boy experiences the sun by its warmth

**III. Answer the following in 2-3 sentences:**

**1. “The blessings of the sight” can you list out a few of them?**

**Ans.:** Day and night, beautiful colours, and the beauty of nature around us are the blessings of the sight.

**2. How does a blind person understand whether it is day or night?**

**Ans.:** Whenever the blind person is awake it is day, when he is asleep it is night for him. Sun does not make his day or night.

**3. How do others feel about the blind boy? What is his reaction?**

**Ans.:** People feel sorry for the blind boy and try to show sympathy towards him. The blind boy says that he does not really understand what he is missing so he does not feel that his life is miserable.

**4. How does the blind boy pacify himself?**

**Ans.:** People sympathize with the blind boy. But the boy does not want to be unhappy about what he cannot get. Though he is poor and blind, he feels rich because he is happy.

**5. What a normal person can understand is almost a riddle to the blind boy. What is it?**

**Ans.:** We can recognize day and night. The blind boy can feel the warmth of the sun, but doesn't know how the sun can make day and night because when he falls asleep it is night and whenever he is awake it is day for him.

**6. What is the message of the poem ‘The Blind Boy’?**

**Ans.:** The message of the poem ‘The Blind Boy’ is we should be happy and contented with what god has given us. We should not spoil our happiness by trying to get what we can't.

**IV Read each of the following extracts and answer the questions given below:**

**1. “I feel him warm, but how can he or make it day or night?”**

a. Who is the ‘I’ here?

**Ans.:** ‘I’ here refers to the blind boy.

- b. Whose warmth does he feel? Why does he wonder how he makes day or night?

**Ans.:** He feels the warmth of the sun. The blind boy cannot see the sun rising or setting. So he wonders how he can make day or night.

2. **“And could I ever keep awake  
With me ‘there always day”**

- a. Who is the speaker here?

**Ans.:** The blind boy is the speaker here.

- b. What is he trying to convey here?

**Ans.:** The blind boy cannot see the difference between day and night. To him it is day when he plays and night when he sleeps. So he says that if he did not sleep it would always be day for him

3. **“But sure with patience, I can bear”  
A loss I ne’ver can know”**

- a. What is the ‘loss’ the speaker cannot know?

**Ans.:** The loss here refers to the blessings of sight.

- b. How does he face the loss? What does it show about him?

**Ans.:** The blind boy does not feel sorry for what he cannot have. He bears his loss patiently and cheerfully.

4. **“Then let not what I cannot have my cheer of mind destroy”.**

- a. What made the speakers say these words.

**Ans.:** When people felt sorry for the blind boy and felt that he cannot enjoy many things, then the blind boy said these words.

- b. What was the reply of the speaker?

**Ans.:** The blind boy does not want to be unhappy about things he cannot get. He wishes to remain cheerful at all times.

#### V Answer the following in 8-10 sentences

1. **“We should feel happy with what he had and never go after what we can’t get”. How has the poet brought about this message in the poem ‘The Blind Boy’. OR Summary of the poem ‘The Blind Boy’.**

**Ans. :** This poem peeps into the feelings of a boy who cannot see. The blind boy is the speaker in the poem. He wonders what light is like for he has never seen it. He wishes to know what his blessings of sight are. People around him talk of the beautiful things they see. They say that the sun shines bright but he can only feel the warmth of the sun. He cannot understand how the sun brings about night and day. To him, day is when he is awake and night when he sleeps. So if he remained awake it would continue to be day for him. The blind boy hears people pitying him but he does not feel sorry for himself. He decides that he will not make himself unhappy over something he cannot get. He would be happy as a King by being ever cheerful.

**VI Quote from memory (8 lines)**

\*\*\*\*\*

Unit - 8  
**SCIENCE AND HOPE OF SURVIVAL**

**I Four alternatives are given. Choose the best alternatives.**

**1. If you are so clever, why are you so poor? The ‘you’ in the statement refers more to a .....**

- |              |                |
|--------------|----------------|
| a. Scientist | b. Lawyer      |
| c. Doctor    | d. Businessman |

**Ans. : a. Scientist**

**2. Every one on the Earth lived under the threat of annihilation by .....**

- |                    |                 |    |
|--------------------|-----------------|----|
| a. Nuclear Weapons | b. Super Powers | c. |
| Natural Calamities | d. Earthquakes  |    |

**Ans.: Nuclear Weapons**

**3. “Immersion in Science does not go with common sense” suggests .....**

- a. foolishness of scientists
- b. absentmindedness of scientists
- c. that scientists do not bother about the results of their work
- d. that scientists are practical people

**Ans.: absentmindedness of scientists**

**4. The three super powers were willing to put a ban on**

- |                             |                |
|-----------------------------|----------------|
| a. nuclear weapon test      | b. nuclear war |
| c. possession of ammunition | d. cold war    |

**Ans.: nuclear weapon test**

**5. Which of the following qualities helped the scientists to come up with a solution to the problem.**

- |                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| a. self-assessment | b. self –praise    |
| c. popularity      | d. self-discipline |

**Ans.: self-discipline**

**II. Answer the following in 2 or 3 sentences only:**

- 1. According to the author, why do some people choose to become scientists though they may not earn much money?**

**Ans.:** According to the author, some people choose to be scientists because they cannot live without science.

To them science is an adventure and the discovery made is the reward.

Instead of money they enjoy freedom, friendship and the joy of uncovering one of the mysteries of nature.

- 2. Technical experts were summoned by the then Soviet Academy of sciences solve the problem. What was the problem or What was the ‘problem’ that the nuclear powers had faced? Was it a violation of the agreement or was it the detection of violation? Explain briefly?**

**Ans.:** The three super powers wanted to come to an agreement, putting a ban on the nuclear weapon test. But there was a possibility that one of the participants could secretly make an underground nuclear explosion. The problem was how the other powers could detect this violation

- 3. Technical experts from the super power nations met in Geneva. Why?/What was the purpose?**

**Ans.:** The three super powers wanted to come to an agreement, putting a ban on the nuclear weapon test. And also to discuss the problems that could arise as a result.

- 4. Who will be head hunted by financial institution and pharmaceutical industries? Why?**

**Ans.:** The people trained in theoretical physics are head hunted by financial institutions, those trained in frontiers of biological research became founders and directors in the pharmaceutical industry.

- 5. Give a few examples which illustrate the writer’s stand that scientists are the most practical people in the world.**

**Ans.:** All new technologies, all new brands of industry are the results of research by scientists.

It is through their work that we have medicines, electronics, synthetic fibres, modes of transport and the green revolution. This proves that scientists are the most practical people.

- 6. “A paradox may refer to a person, a thing or a situation that has two opposite features and therefore seems strange”. In the light of this definition how is MAD a paradox?**

**Ans.:** The agreed nations had the nuclear power signed to stop the nuclear weapons. But if any country violated the agreement and how it could be detected is the paradox.

**7. Make a list of lessons that the writer learnt at the Geneva Summit.**

**Ans.:** As a scientist, the author had people like him all over the world, who could think and interact as the author, when he is abroad, he need not feel lonely.

Science gives us hope of survival and well being for the whole mankind.

**III. Read the given extracts and answer the questions that follow:**

**1. It turned out that this problem had a direct connection with the theory of seismic waves. Underground nuclear explosions produced earth tremors very similar to those generated by earthquakes.**

a. When did this 'problem' arise?

**Ans:** This problem arose during the Geneva Summit.

b. What is the 'problem' referred here?

**Ans.:** The 'problem' referred here is how the powers could detect the violation of agreement.

**2. The three nuclear powers were willing to come to an agreement.**

a. Who were the three nuclear powers?

**Ans.:** Soviet union, united states and united kingdom

b. What was the agreement?

**Ans.:** The three nuclear powers were willing to come to an agreement putting a ban on the nuclear weapon test.

**3. At that time every man, and child on the Earth lived under the threat of annihilation?**

a. What caused this thread?

**Ans.:** Nuclear weapons

b. Why did everyone live under the threat?

**Ans.:** Because each super power nation seemed stronger than the other as far as nuclear weapons were concerned.

**4. "My theoretical knowledge had a direct application in the area of survival of humankind"**

a. In which field did the author, Borok, have theoretical knowledge?

**Ans.:** The author was doing research on seismic waves and had theoretical knowledge in this field.

- b. How would it have a direct application in the area of survival of humankind?

**Ans.:** Underground nuclear explosions produced earth tremors like those generated by earthquakes. With his knowledge, the author would know the difference between the two. This would help in checking the violation of the Nuclear Test Ban agreement.

#### **IV. Answer the following in 6-8 sentences:**

- 1. What lessons did the writer learn at the Geneva Summit?**

**Ans.:** The writer learnt many things at the Geneva Summit. The first was that there were people all around the world who think and interact the way he did. Secondly, he learnt that with those people with the same interests around him, he could never feel lonely abroad. Thirdly he realized that science is our indispensable guardian and caretaker.

As long as there is science, there is hope of survival and well being for all of us.

- 2. Why did the scientists meet at Geneva? What conclusion did they come to?**

**Ans.:** After the Second World War the U.S.A., U.S.S.R and U.K. became powerful countries in the world. Each of these nations had nuclear bombs. Within minutes the world could be destroyed. In order to save themselves the super powers were willing to come to an agreement of putting a ban on the nuclear weapon tests. But there was a doubt about violating this treaty. Therefore, a number of scientists all over the world met at Geneva to save the world from danger. They arrived at a decision which resulted in the formulation of Nuclear Text Ban.

- 3. 'Iron Curtain' is referred as a barrier. It was outwardly difficult for the opposite sides of the iron curtain to find out the solution for the problem of violation of agreement. What was the reason?**

**Ans.:** A cold war was going on the atmosphere. There were political tensions as well and at that moment it was expected from scientists and engineers to find out the solution for the problem of violation of agreement which was impossible. It was because everyone had a different cultural background. They were able to work out a common language by expertise but still the cold war and the political tensions did not allow them to break the Iron Curtain.

\*\*\*\*\*

Unit - 8

**OFF TO OUTER SPACE TOMORROW MORNING**

**I Four alternatives are given. Choose the best alternatives.**

**1. With what feelings is the speaker flying out of earth?**

- |                    |                           |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| a. despair         | b. Lack of Confidence     |
| c. fear of failure | d. doubt about his return |

**Ans.: d. doubt about his return**

**2. The expression “winter under lock” means, that in space**

- |                                  |                              |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| a. there is no change of seasons | b. seasons change frequently |
| c. capsules are locked in winter | d. there is no hear          |

**Ans.: there is no change of season**

**3. You can start the count Down; You can take last look; suggests .....**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| a. the end of the launching of the rocket       | b. the re-entering of the rocket to the earth |
| c. the beginning of the launching of the rocket | d. failure of the launching of the rocket     |

**Ans.: c. the beginning of the launching of the rocket**

**4. You can cross out my name from the telephone book – the poet says this because .....**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a. he will not be coming back from space | b. he is a failure in space               |
| c. he is lost in space                   | d. he cannot have any contact with others |

**Ans.: he cannot have any contact with others**

**II. Answer the following in one sentence only:**

**1. “You can cross out my name from the telephone book” why does the poet say this?**

**Ans.:** Because he will be off to space and nobody can contact him.

**2. “In Solit’ry confinement as complete as any gaol”. In the above mentioned line what two things are compared?**

**Ans.:** Lonliness to gaol confinement

**3. Why do the tea cups circle around him?**

**Ans.:** There is no gravity in space. So tea cups circle around him.

**4. What does the poet mean by saying “There won’t be any calendar?”**

**Ans.:** The poet means that there is no count of days in space.

**III. Answer the following questions in 2 or 3 sentences:**

**1. State the reason for the poet to say ‘Calendars and clocks are useless in space?’**

**Ans.:** The poet says this because there are no seasons and no day and night.

**2. The speaker has the feeling that he is imprisoned. What might have been the reason for him to have such a feeling?**

**Ans.:** The speaker is alone and he feels lonely. He cannot have contact with anybody. No one can visit him.

**3. Give some instances of daily routine mentioned in the poem ‘Off to Outer Space Tomorrow Morning’?**

**Ans.:** Writing letters, people visiting, knocking at the door phone contact. The speaker cannot do all these things because he is in space.

**IV. Read the given extracts and answer the questions that follow:**

**1. “There won’t be any calendar, there won’t be any clock;**

a. Where is the speaker experiencing this?

**Ans.:** Space

b. Why will there be no calendars or clocks?

**Ans. :** There is no concept of time while flying through space. So there are no calendars or clocks.

**2. “With tea cups circling round me like the planets round the sun”**

a. Where would the speaker experience this?

**Ans.:** In space

b. Why does the speaker have the above feeling?

**Ans.:** There is no gravitational force in space. So everything floats.

**3. I'm off to outer space tomorrow morning?**

- a. Who is off to outer space?

**Ans.:** The speaker/the poet

- b. Why is this above line repeated several times in this poem?

**Ans.:** The poet would be alone in a world of his own. To emphasis his loneliness this above line is repeated.

**V. Answer the following in 6-8 sentences:**

**1. How has the poet described the life in space?**

**Ans.:** He has mentioned that there is absence of gravitation pull in space. Everything keeps on swirling inside the rocket. The concept of day and night doesn't apply in space. There will be no communication in the form of letters and mails with the outer world. Calendars and clocks are useless in space. Totally, we can say that life in space is totally in contrast to life on earth.

\*\*\*\*\*

SUPPLEMENTARY READING  
**1. NARAYANPUR INCIDENT**

**I. Answer the following in about 4-6 sentences each**

**1. Why were the students marching in the street? Why was it termed uncommon?**

**Ans.:** The students were marching to give a notice to the collector, for the British to quit India. It was uncommon because they walked silently without shouting slogans or behaving in a violent manner. Even though there were policemen, they marched as if the policemen didn't exist.

**2. Can you guess what the police officer had been talking to the student leaders?**

**Ans. :** The students met the D.S.P. and one of them handed him a piece of paper. The Police Officer didn't even glance at it. This shows that he might have advised them to go back. He might have told them to stop their agitation.

**3. Babu and Manju were a bit disappointed with the way students were marching. What was the reason?**

**Ans.:** The students marched back to their homes silently and Manju and Babu thought that the students were scared of the police. According to them, the students should have protested. Hence, they were disappointed.

**4. What had the police expected about the way of protest? How did the student leaders manage the protest?**

**Ans.:** The police expected the students to shout slogans and cause violence. This would make the police to arrest them, beat them up and imprison them. But the students leaders did not want to be arrested then, as they had a lot more to do. Therefore, they marched back silently.

**5. What was there in the 'mysterious parcel'? What suspicion did the police have about that?**

**Ans.:** The 'mysterious parcel' contained a 'cyclostyle machine'. The police suspected that Mohan and his family were making copies of Mahatma's speech. They also suspected that some people were hiding these.

**6. Why had Patil, the sub – inspector come to Mohan's house? Who believed him? What was the result?**

**Ans.:** Patil the sub-inspector came to Mohan's house to give a warning about the raid of his wife. As he was a close friend of Mohan's father, he asked Mohan to give him the cyclostyle machine and all proof pertaining to the agitation against the British. Mohan's mother believed him and allowed him to take away all these things.

**7. How do you know that Mohan's mother was supportive of their struggle?**

**Ans.:** When Suman and their friend brought the cyclostyle machine, she asked them to keep it in the puja room. When the sub Inspector came in initially, she acted as if everything was normal and nothing revolutionary took place at their home.

**8. What do you think is the writer of the incident trying to impress upon the readers?**

**Ans.:** People wanted to fight against the British and get freedom. Some Indians were working for the British but they were waiting for them to quit India. These people helped the freedom fighters secretly. The sub-Inspector Patil also indirectly helped Mohan's family.

\*\*\*\*\*

## 2. ON TOP OF THE WORLD

### I. Answer the following in two or three sentences only

**1. What makes you think that Dicky Dolma's life as a girl was sorrowful?**

**Ans.:** Dicky Dolma lost her mother when she was 11. She lost her elder brother too.

**2. What factors encouraged Dolma to take up basic mountaineering course?**

**Ans.:** Dolma came to know that a mountaineering institute was set up at Manali and it would give training to those who were interested in climbing mountains. Her friends and her family members also encouraged her to join this course.

**3. Dolma says, "It is not a difficult decision for me to take up the challenge of the lofty mountains" Why does she say so?**

**Ans.:** From her childhood, Dolma had been fascinated by the grandeur of the snow clad peaks of the Himalayas. Her home, in Palchan was surrounded by beautiful mountain peaks.

**4. How has Dolma described her preparedness for the task of scaling Mount Everest?**

**Ans.:** Dolma got training in the mountaineering institute at Manali. Her determination and hard work helped her to secure 'A' grades. She believed that success always follow dedication, determination and hard work. She used to practice four hours everyday before the task of scaling Mount Everest

**5. What was the biggest headache that Dolma had to face besides her physical and mental problem?**

**Ans.:** Dolma's father was bedridden. She was not financially sound and she needed a lot of money for her father's treatment, so the family had very little to offer her.

**6. What does Dolma say about mountaineering after she returns from Mount Everest?**

**Ans.:** "Mountaineering" is a tough sport. This thought never comes to me. It is my zeal for the work. Seeing peaks is a second nature to me. I have never been scared when it comes to hard work", says Dolma.

**7. What does Dolma say about the view from the top of Mount Everest?**

**Ans.:** Dolma said that an Everest can feel and understand but cannot be described in words. It was much breath taking that she could ever be imagined. The awards that she had bestowed stand very low before the view from the above.

**8. What can we learn from Dolma's life?**

**Ans.:** Whenever hurdles come, we must face them boldly. Dolma's determination and hard work, Zeal for the work is emulating.

\*\*\*\*\*

### 3. A GREAT MARTYR EVER CHERISHED

#### I. Answer the following questions in 2 or 3 sentences each

1. **The writer speaks of the 'smile' that welcomes anyone who enters Hanif's house. What more do we know about this 'smile'?**

**Ans.:** Hanifuddin was a soldier. He participated in the Kargil war in 1999 and sacrificed his life for the sake of the country. He was then 25 years old.

2. **What did Hanif choose as his mission? Why did he do so?**

**Ans.:** Hanif knew that life for him was short; he wanted to serve the nation. Therefore he joined Indian Army as a soldier. He believed that a person working for the nation could change lives.

3. **Life for Hanif in the beginning was never a smooth sail. Why was it so?**

**Ans.:** Hanif lost his father when he was just eight years old. His mother a vocal artiste, was out very often with the performance wing. Therefore he became very responsible at a tender age.

4. **The absence of mother from home taught the children something. What was that?**

**Ans.:** Hanif's mother a vocal artiste, would often have to leave the children alone as she travelled with the performance wing. The kids became very responsible getting up and getting ready for school without her having told them and learnt that one's duty is the most important thing in life.

5. **Share your thoughts and impression of Hanif with your classmates.**

**Ans.:** Hanif even though he lived only for 25 years, continues to live forever in our hearts. In his short life span he became a hero by sacrificing himself in the Kargil war. Because of the hardships from a tender age, he learnt that one's duty is the most important thing in life. He often went out of his way to help people and this gave him happiness. He was a young man of varied talents and interest. Life for Hanif was always 'ekdam bindas'

6. **How does the writer describe the 'introvert' Hanif?**

**Ans.:** Hanif began to make friends at his fourteenth year of age. He often went out of his way to help people. By doing so, he derived joy.

7. **Hanif was a young man with varied talents and interest. Illustrate this statement drawing support from the text.**

**Ans.:** Haniff dabbled in art, sketched very well. He made beautiful cards out of waste material. He read books and loved playing drums.

**8. What were the dreams of Hanif? Do you think they were fulfilled?**

**Ans.:** Haniff had dreamt that he would rise up the ranks. This dream could not be fulfilled because he was killed in the Kargil war. His another dream was that a post be named after him. Those dreams came true when the sub-sector was named after him.

\*\*\*\*\*

## 4. DR. B.R. AMBEDKAR

### I. Answer the following questions briefly

**1. Ambedkar had a great thirst for books when he was a student. Explain.**

**Ans.:** Throughout his life Dr. Ambedkar was a voracious reader. He had an insatiable thirst for books. He bought books by curtailing his daily needs. In New York he purchased about 2,000 books and that they to be sent to India in 32 boxes.

**2. How did the fourteenth amendment to the US Constitution and Mahatma Phule influence on Ambedkar?**

**Ans.:** While in U.S.A. Ambedkar was drawn to the fourteenth amendment of the constitution of the U.S.A. which gave freedom to the Black Americans. He was at once the parallel of the situation for the depressed classes in India. On returning India he was greatly influenced by the life and work of Mahatma Phule, the votary of a classless society and women's upliftment. This made him to devote all his time and talents for the betterment of his underprivileged brethren.

**3. There were great luminaries on the Drafting Committee Dr. Ambedkar is remembered as the pilot. Give reasons.**

**Ans.:** Dr. Ambedkar was the chairman of the drafting committee. He was tactful, frank and had utmost patience. He explained clearly the meaning and scope of the different provisions of the Draft constitution. He explained the most complicated legal concepts which could be easily understood even by a layman.

**4. Write a short note on Dr. Ambedkar's idea/perception of the three pillars of state.**

**Ans.:** Dr. Ambedkar had a clear idea about mutuality of the legislature, the Executive and the judiciary. He said that the jurisdiction of each should be clear and untrammelled. He had a sense of the importance of the role of citizens.

**5. What are the significant observations of Dr. Ambedkar on the constitution?**

**Ans.:** The constitution is a fundamental document which defines the position and power of the three organs of the state – the executive, the judiciary and the legislature. It also defines the powers of the executive and legislature as against the citizens. The other purpose of constitution to limit their authority to avoid tyranny and oppression by the legislature and the Executive.

**6. Nehru choose Dr. Ambedkar as the law minister. What might have improved Nehru to do so?**

**Ans. :** Ambedkar had a great skill in law and legislation. He had the vision of social justice. Therefore, Nehru chose him to be Law Minister of India.

**7. What made Dr. Ambedkar describe the methods of civil disobedience, Non-cooperation and Satyagraha as the “Grammar of Anarchy”?**

**Ans.:** According to Ambedkar, methods of civil disobedience non-cooperation and Satyagraha are necessary in a state which is ruled by foreigners. But in a democratic country, these methods should not be used. If used there would be loss of lives and public property.

**8. How did Dr. Ambedkar and Mahatma Gandhi try to wipe out caste discrimination from India?**

**Ans.:** Gandhiji reminded the higher castes their duty towards the depressed classes.

Babasaheb Ambedkar did the same by reminding them of their inherent rights to equality with the higher and more powerful castes.

One stressed the duties, the other stressed the rights.

\*\*\*\*\*

## **READING - SECTION - B**

1. Poem - Homes
2. The Sports Graph
3. Pictures
4. Put the bubbles in the right order
5. The Railway time table
6. A message
7. Put the jumbled sentence in proper order
8. A letter
9. Report Card
10. Road Map
11. Weather Report
12. My Classroom
13. Thai food festival
14. Japan

Activity – 1  
**READING**

**POEM - HOMES**

I might have lived inside a shell  
If I had been a snail  
Or in a great wide tossing sea  
If I had been a whale  
Or in a busy noisy hive  
If I'd been born a bee  
Or a bunny in a burrow  
Eating lettuce for my tea  
I might have had a kennel home  
If I had been a dog;  
Or a mud hole in a river bank  
Had I been a frog  
I might have been a little bird  
And lived inside a nest.  
But oh! I'm glad I'm just a child,  
I think my home is best.

**Read the poem 'Homes' and answer the following questions**

**A. Where do the following live ?**

1. a snail .....
2. a whale .....
3. a bee .....
4. a bunny .....
5. a dog .....
6. a frog .....
7. a bird .....

**B. Write True or False :**

8. The mud hole is in a river bank.
9. The sea is great and wide.

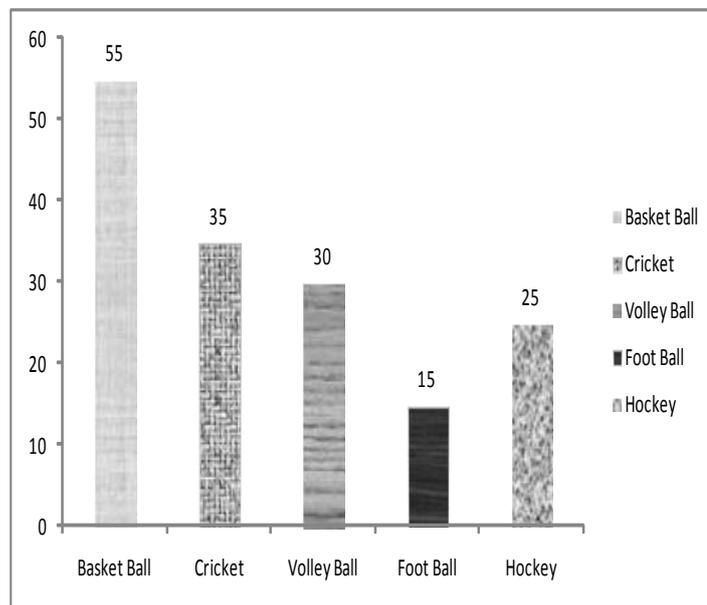


Activity – 2

## THE SPORTS GRAPH

The children of class V of Bal Vidyalaya have to take up one of the following games – Basket Ball, Cricket, Volleyball, Football and Hockey.

The graph shows the number of children each game.



### A. Answer these questions

1. Which game has the highest number of participants?
2. How many students are playing hockey?
3. Which is more popular – volley ball or foot ball?
4. What is the total number of children playing cricket and volley ball?
5. Are more children playing volley ball or hockey?
6. How many games are played in the school?

### B. Write T for True statements and F for False statements.

7. More children are playing basketball than cricket.
8. Football is the least popular game.
9. Hockey and foot ball are less popular than basket ball.
10. Volleyball is the most popular game.

**C. Match the columns**

- |                                  |    |
|----------------------------------|----|
| 11. Children playing basket ball | 35 |
| 12. Children playing football    | 55 |
| 13. Children playing hockey      | 25 |
| 14. Children playing cricket     | 15 |

**Answers**

- |                          |                |                |
|--------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| <b>A.</b> 1. Basket Ball | 2. Twenty Five | 3. Volley Ball |
| 4. Sixty Five            | 5. Volley Ball | 6. Five games  |
| <b>B.</b> 7. True        | 8. True        | 9. True        |
| 10. False                | 11. 55         | 12. 15         |
| 13. 25                   | 14. 35         |                |

\*\*\*\*\*

Activity – 3

**PICTURES**

Given below, are some words related to picture. Read them and then answer the questions.

- Collage** : A picture made by sticking things like leaves, grass, bits of coloured paper or material onto paper
- Diagram** : A drawing or plan of how something works.
- Drawing** : A picture made with pen, pencil or crayon.
- Illustration** : A picture in a book
- Mural** : A picture painted on a wall
- Painting** : A picture that you make using paint
- Pattern** : A picture of shapes repeated many times over wall paper, rangoli, carpets and gift wrapping paper have patterns
- Portrait** : A picture of a person.
- Poster** : A large picture you can stick on wall.
- Sketch** : A drawing that you do quickly.
- Photo** : A picture you take with a camera. This word is short for photograph.

**A. Fill in the blanks :**

1. A beautiful ..... is painted on the front wall of our school hall.
2. Rama has made a ..... by pasting coloured pieces of paper on a sheet.
3. I have a large ..... of my grandfather on the wall of my room.
4. I have a story book with colourful .....
5. I have made a ..... of our village house with crayons.
6. We put up many ..... on pollution in school.

**B. Answer the following questions**

7. What would you need to make a drawing?
8. In which of your text books will you find diagrams?
9. What kind of pictures will you paste in your family album?
10. What are the pictures on a saree called?

**Answers**

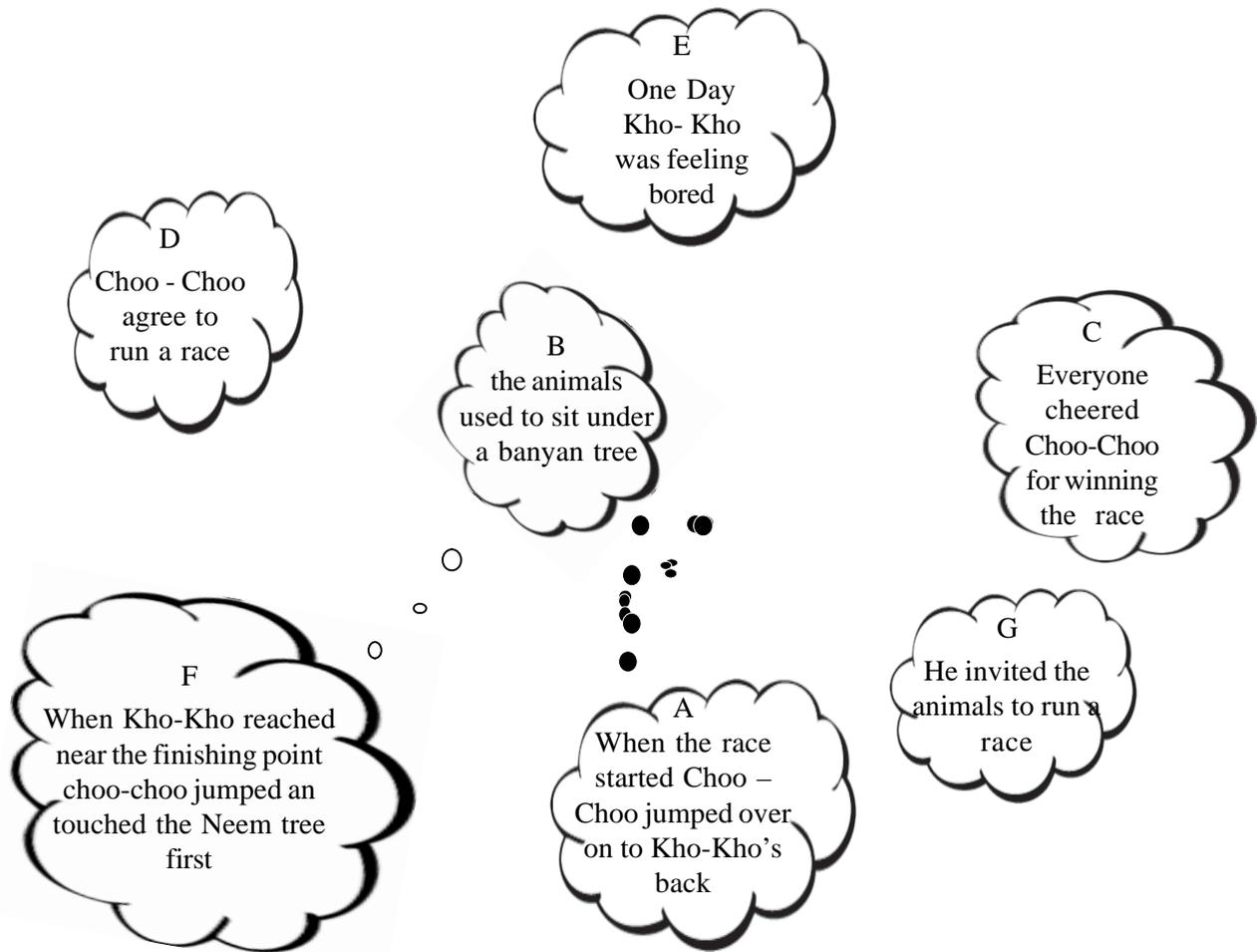
- A. 1. mural
- 2. Collage
- 3. Portrait/Photograph
- 4. Illustration
- 5. Sketch
- 6. Posters
  
- B. 7. A pen, a pencil or a crayon
- 8. in science and maths text books.
- 9. Photograph
- 10. a pattern

\*\*\*\*\*

Activity –4

**BUBBLE DIAGRAM**

**Read the statements in the bubbles and put them in the right order**



**Answers**

1. B – The animals used to sit under a banyan tree
2. E – One day Kho – Kho was feeling bored.
3. G – He invited the animals to run a race.
4. D – Choo – Choo agreed to run a race.
5. A – When the race started Choo – Choo jumped over onto Kho – Kho’s back.
6. F – When Kho – Kho reached near the finishing point Choo – Choo jumped and touched the Neem tree first.
7. C – Everyone cheered Choo – Choo for winning the race.

\*\*\*\*\*

Activity – 5

**The Railway Time Table**

Time table at the New Delhi Railway Station

**Read the above Railway time table and fill in the blanks.**

1. This time table is put up at ..... railway station.
2. Arrival means to ..... and .....
3. .... Express goes from Delhi to Jammu
4. Rajdhani Express and ..... arrive at New Delhi Station at 10.00 a.m.
5. According to this time table, there are ..... platforms on the station.
6. Karnataka Express leaves the station at .....
7. .... does not start from Delhi.
8. The two trains that can take us to Mumbai are ..... and .....
9. .... arrives at platform no. 6.
10. Shatabdi Express goes till .....
11. Karnataka Express arrives at ..... (time)
12. Jammu Tawi Express leaves the station at night but Shatabdi Express departs in the .....
13. The Common station for all the trains is .....
14. The Punjab Mail leaves New Delhi station to go to .....
15. ...., ....., ..... and New Delhi are some of the names of the stations mentioned in the time table.

Name of the train	Arrival At New Delhi
1. Rajdhani Express (Delhi to Mumbai)	10.00 am
2. Shatabdi Express (Delhi to Bhopal)	7.00 p.m.
3. Jammu Tawi Express (Delhi to Jammu)	6.00 a.m.
4. Punjab Mail (Amritsar to Mumbai)	10.00 a.m.
5. Howrah Express (Delhi to Bangalore)	11.00 a.m.
6. Karnataka Express (Delhi to Bangalore)	9.00 a.m.

**Answers**

1. New Delhi
2. Come, departure
3. Jammu Tawi Express
4. Punjab Mail
5. 6
6. 9.00 pm
7. Punjab Mail
8. Rajdhani Express and Punjab Mail
9. Howrah Express
10. Bhopal
11. 9.00 am
12. Morning
13. New Delhi
14. Mumbai
15. Mumbai, Bhopal, Jammu, Howrah, Bangalore (any three)

\*\*\*\*\*

Activity – 6

**A MESSAGE**

It was 3 o'clock. Gautam came back from school. The door was locked. He remembered – whenever mummy goes out, she leaves the key with the neighbours. So he got the key from the neighbours and opened the door. He threw his bag on the dining table. There under the flower vase he saw his Mummy's note. It said

Gautam,

Your 'Nani' is not well so I'm going to her house. I'll come back at about 6'O clock. After changing your dress, have your lunch. Don't forget to wash your hands before that. Then, take some rest. Finish your homework. You can go to play after 5 p.m. only if you have finished your home work. Don't forget to lock the front door and leave the key with Aunt.

Your Mummy.

**A. Choose the correct answer**

1. The key was with
  - a. Mummy
  - b. Nani
  - c. The Neighbour
  - d. Gautam
2. The note was
  - a. under the bag
  - b. in the flower – vase
  - c. under the table
  - d. under the flower – vase
3. After reaching home, Gautam should first
  - a. wash his hands
  - b. change his dress
  - c. do his home work
  - d. have lunch
4. Mummy will return home at
  - a. 6 p.m.
  - b. 5 p.m.
  - c. 3 p.m.
  - d. 8 p.m.

5. 'He saw his mummy's note – 'note' here means
  - a. money
  - b. written message
  - c. diary
  - d. a piece of paper

**B. Complete the sentence**

6. Mummy went to 'Nani's house' because .....
7. 'Don't forget to wash your hand before that' 'That' here stands for .....
8. Gautam could go for playing after .....

**C. Answer the following questions**

9. When does Gautam come back from school ?
10. Why was the door locked ?
11. Whom was the note meant for ?
12. Which sentence shows that Mummy always leaves the key with the neighbours?
13. Mention two things which Gautam was asked not to forget?
14. Where was Gautam asked to leave the key?

**Answers**

1. C
2. D
3. B
4. A
5. B
6. She was not well
7. Lunch
8. He had finished his home – work
9. at 3 pm
10. Mummy had gone out
11. Gautam
12. 'Whenever Mummy goes out, she leaves the key with the neighbours'.
13. Lock the front door/ wash hands before lunch / leave the key with the neighbours (any two)
14. With the neighbours / aunt

\*\*\*\*\*

Activity –7

**READING**

**Here is a story. The sentences have been jumbled up. Put them in proper order.**

- a. Mohan was going to school
- b. He picked up the purse and opened it.
- c. “Is this yours?” asked Mohan.
- d. There was a hundred rupee note in it.
- e. “It’s not my money” Mohan said to himself.
- f. Mohan gave back the purse to him.
- g. He thought of keeping it with him.
- h. The old man was looking for something.
- i. The old man thanked him.
- j. On the way he found a purse lying on the road
- k. Just then an old man passed by.
- l. The old man said ‘Yes’.

**Answers**

a, j, b, d, g, e, k, h, c, l, f, i

\*\*\*\*\*

Activity – 8

**A LETTER**

27, Car Street  
Mangaluru – 575 001  
15.11.1997

Dear Ravi,

How are you ? It must be very cold in Shimla! I hope you are having lots of fun. Mangaluru is very humid these days – because it is close to the sea. Winter seem to be far away. Who would say that it is the month of November here! Even these days fans are needed. I wish I could come to Shimla! I remember last year when I had come to your house in winter. One day your father’s jeep got stuck in the road due to the heavy snow. We got out of the jeep and hit snow balls at each other and made a snow man. I am really looking forward to going to a hill station soon.

Give my regards to your parents and love to Akshay Bhaiya. Write to me soon.

Your loving friend

Rahul

**A. Choose the correct answer :**

1. Ravi’s father’s jeep got stuck in  
a. mud            b. sand            c. snow
2. Rahu visited Shimla during  
a. the rains      b. winter      c. summer

**B. Write True or False against the statements**

3. Ravi wants to go to Shimla (      )
4. Mangaluru was very cold when the letter was written (      )
5. Ravi has a brother. (      )
6. Rahul has been to Shimla before (      )

**C. Find the word from the passage which means :**

7. damp weather
8. to keep in mind
9. unable to move

**D. Answer these question :**

10. In which city does Rahul live ?
11. Why does Rahul wants to go to Shimla? Give two reasons.
12. What did he do last year in Shimla with Ravi?
13. Why is Mangaluru humid?

**Answers**

1. c. Snow
2. b. Winter
3. False
4. False
5. True
6. True
7. Humid
8. Remember
9. Stuck
10. Mangaluru
11. To make snowman and play in the snow (hit snow balls at each other)
12. Made snowman and hit snowballs at each other.
13. Because it is close to the sea.

\*\*\*\*\*

Activity –9

**REPORT CARD**

Raju is a student of class X. Look at his Report Card and notice his marks and grades in I and II Terminal Tests in different subjects.

<b>Subject</b>	<b>Maximum Marks</b>	<b>1<sup>st</sup> Terminal Test</b>	<b>2<sup>nd</sup> Terminal Test</b>
English	20	12	14
Hindi	20	15	17
Sanskrit	20	17	18
Maths	20	05	05
S. Studies	20	07	07
Gen. Science	20	10	12
Drawing	Gr.	B Grade	A Grade
Music	Gr.	A Grade	A Grade

**A. Answer the following questions**

1. In which term did Raju do better?
2. Which is his weakest subject ?
3. In which subject did he get the highest marks?
4. In which subjects has Raju improved his marks?
5. In which subjects has he shown no improvement?
6. Which subjects have only grades and not marks?
7. In which subject did Raju get the same grade in both the Terminal Tests?
8. By how many marks did he improve in general science in the second Term?

**B. Complete the sentence :**

9. Raju should give more attention to ..... and .....
10. Raju loves music. That is why he got ..... in both the terms.
11. Raju has to study ..... subjects in Class X.

12. The maximum marks in the Terminal Test for each subject are .....

13. Raju's Report Card shows that he is ..... in languages.

**Answers**

1. 2<sup>nd</sup> Term
2. Maths
3. Sanskrit
4. English, Hindi, Sanskrit and Gen. Science
5. Maths and S. Studies
6. Drawing and Music
7. Maths and S. Studies
8. Two marks
9. Maths and Social Studies
10. A grade
11. 6 Subjects
12. 20
13. good

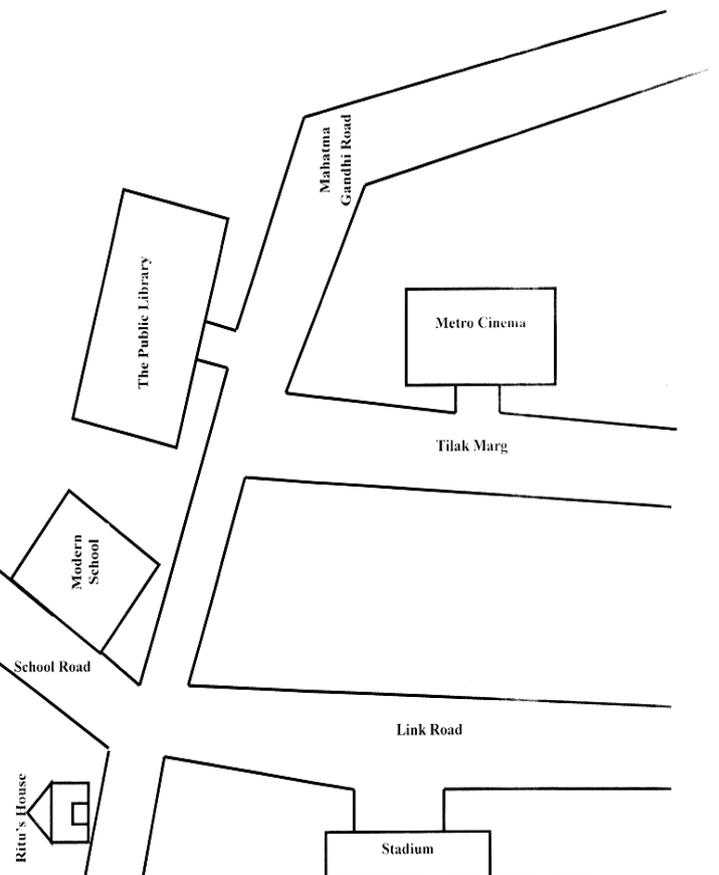
\*\*\*\*\*

Activity – 10

**MAP READING**

Look at the following road map and answer the questions.

*Mahatma Gandhi Road*



**A. You are in the stadium. You have to go to the library. You will turn (left, right) on the Link Road. You will turn (left, right) on the School Road. You will turn (left, right) on the Tilak Marg. You will turn (left, right) on the Mahatma Gandhi Road. Circle the correct words in the brackets.**

On leaving the stadium turn (left, right) on the Link Road. Ritu's house is on the left. You will see the public library on the left. You will turn (left, right) on the Mahatma Gandhi Road. You will turn (left, right) on the Tilak Marg. You will turn (left, right) on the School Road. You will turn (left, right) on the Mahatma Gandhi Road. Circle the correct words in the brackets.

**B. Read the statements carefully and with the help of the map, write 'True' or 'False' in the brackets.**

- 5. Ritu's house is nearer to Modern School than to the Stadium. [     ]
- 6. The Stadium is on the Tilak Marg. [     ]

7. To reach the Modern School Ritu has to take the School Road [    ]
8. To see a film at the Metro Cinema, Ritu has to keep going on the Mahatma Gandhi Road till its end. [    ]
9. On her way to the Metro Cinema she can return her book at the library. [    ]

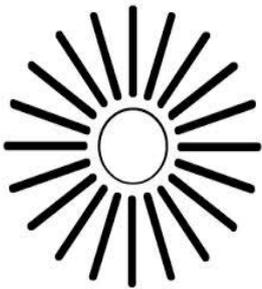
**Answers**

- A. 1. Left 2. Left 3. Right 4. Left
- B. 5. True 6. False 7. True 8. False 9. True

\*\*\*\*\*

Activity 11

**CITY WEATHER**



**Forecast :** Mist in the morning mainly clear sky. Not much changes in high temperature.

**Temperature :** Maximum temperature on Friday 27.6° C and the minimum 16.1° C.

Maximum relative humidity on Friday 96 percent and the minimum 56 percent.

Sunset (Saturday) : 5.36 p.m.

Sunrise (Sunday) : 6.34 a.m.

Moonrise (Sunday) : 6.29 p.m.

Moonset (Saturday) : 9.02 a.m.

Detailed National and International weather on Page 2.

**Here is a weather report from a news paper dated 6 November 199, Saturday. Read it and answer the questions.**

**A. Choose the correct answers**

1. There will be mist in the .....  
a. morning b. evening c. afternoon
2. The sky will be mainly .....  
a. cloudy b. clear c. bright
3. Change in night temperature will be .....  
a. little b. more c. not much

**B. Choose the correct answer**

4. What was the maximum temperature on Friday? (27.6°c/16.1°c)
5. What was the minimum temperature on Friday? (27.6°c/16.1°c)
6. What is the scale used to measure the temperature ? (Fahrenheit/Celsius)
7. What kind of day will Saturday be? (Cloudy/Sunny)

**C. Answer in one word only :**

8. Mention the time for moonrise on Sunday .....
9. What will be time for Moonset on Saturday? .....

**D. Pick up words from the passage to fill in the blanks :**

10. Detailed national and international weather can be seen on .....
11. The time for sunset on Saturday is .....
12. The time for sunrise on Sunday is .....

**E. Choose words from the passage which mean**

13. fog            14. heat and moisture in the air.

**Answers**

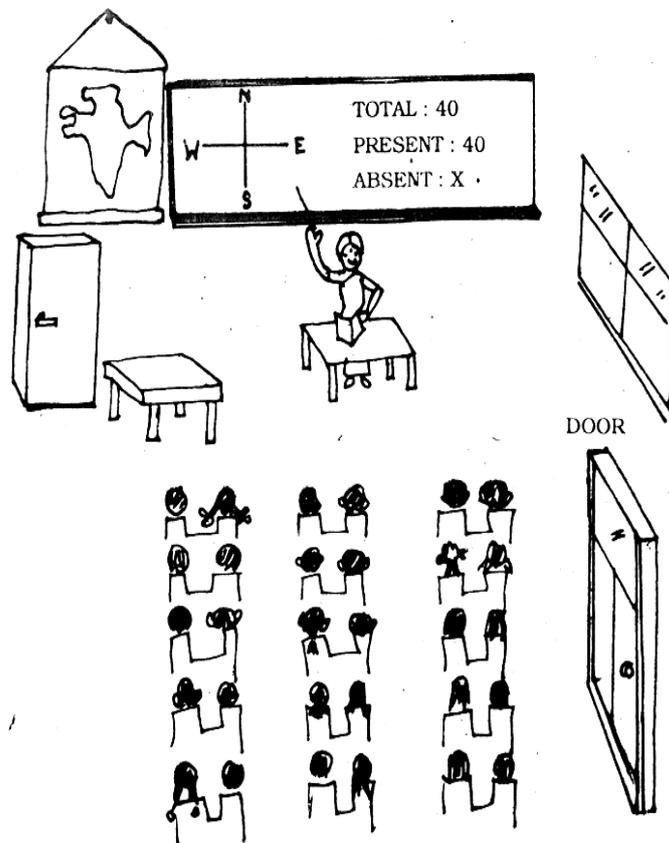
- |             |               |
|-------------|---------------|
| 1. morning  | 2. clear      |
| 3. not much | 4. 27.6°C     |
| 5. 16.1°C   | 6. Celsius    |
| 7. Sunny    | 8. 6.29 am    |
| 9. 9.02 pm  | 10. Page 2    |
| 11. 5.36 pm | 12. 6.34 a.m. |
| 13. Mist    | 14. humidity  |

\*\*\*\*\*

Activity 12

**MY CLASS ROOM**

Look at the following picture. Then answer the questions.



**Questions**

- A. The teacher in the classroom is facing South. Now look at the picture carefully and fill in the blanks.**
1. The children are facing towards the .....
  2. The door is towards the .....
  3. The table is to ..... of the cupboard.
  4. The blackboard is in the .....

5. The window is to the ..... of the door.
6. The map is hanging to the ..... of the board.
6. The map is hanging to the ..... of the board.

**B. Write True or False against the statements.**

7. There are five rows of desks in the class [      ]
8. The teacher is holding the stick in her right hand. [      ]
9. The map is hanging on the board. [      ]
10. Six Children are absent. [      ]
11. The Cupboard is next to the table. [      ]
12. There are two double – windows in the class room. [      ]

**Answers**

1. north 2. East 3. East 4. North 5. North 6. West 7. True 8. True 9. False 10. False 11. True 12. false

\*\*\*\*\*

## THAI FOOD FESTIVAL

Read the advertisement

Thai Soup  
Thai Food  
Thai Masks  
Thai Crafts  
Thai Carvings  
Come, experience  
it all at  
Ashok Hotel.

Savour the hottest, spiciest, chilliest Thai food cooked by the Chefs from Thailand. Also enjoy Khon mask making, fruit and vegetable carving, flower arrangements and traditional perfumery and ceramics making and decoration.

**Thai**  
FOOD FESTIVAL  
DATE : 20-27 AUG '97

**Ashok Hotel**  
New Delhi

For reservation contact  
Tel : 6110101 Ext. 1453

### Question

#### A. Fill in the blanks :

1. This advertisement is about .....
2. The festival was held at .....
3. The Ashok Hotel is in .....
4. For reserving your place you could contact the phone no. ....
5. The festival was held from ..... August to ..... August, 1997.

**B. Say True or False**

6. This piece is a story of Thailand. [    ]
7. The advertisement shows the picture of a dragon. [    ]
8. At the Thai festival you could see flower arrangements also. [    ]
9. You could also watch Thai dance. [    ]
10. At the festival you can see carved fruit and vegetables. [    ]

**C. Answer the following questions.**

11. Name the five things you could experience at the Thai food festival.
12. Who cooked the Thai food.
13. What is Thai food like? Pick out three food which describe the food.
14. You could see the making of Thai masks at the festival. What are these masks called?

**Answers**

1. Thai food festival
2. Ashok Hotel, New Delhi
3. New Delhi
4. 6110101 Ext. 1453
5. 20.08.97 to 27.08.97
6. False
7. True
8. True
9. False
10. True
11. Thai Soup, Thai food, Thai masks, Thai Crafts and Thai Carvings.
12. Chefs from Thailand
13. Hottest, spiciest and Chilliast
14. Khon Mask

\*\*\*\*\*

## Activity – 14

### JAPAN

In Japan the whole year is a time of fun and festivals for the children. In the spring the countryside and the hills are full of small streams. The young boys love fishing in them. Summer brings many festivals. One festival is 'Tanahata'. On this day children decorate bamboo branches with coloured paper and pray for a good handwriting. Autumn brings the festival of thanks – giving for good crops. People make small shrines called "Mikoshi" and take them in a procession through the streets. Children enjoy carrying the shrines turn by turn. They believe that this would bring good luck to homes and shops. In Northern Japan, where there is snow all round in winter, the Japanese celebrate the festival of 'Kamakura'. They make snow huts. Children invite their friends and offer them oranges and glasses of warm sweet rice wine.

#### Fill up this table

Season	Festival	How they Celebrate
Summer	1) .....	2) .....
3) .....	Festivals of Thanks giving	4) .....
5) .....	6) .....	Make snow huts and invite friend

#### Answer

1. Tanahata
2. decorate bamboo branches with coloured papers
3. Autumn
4. make small shrines called Mikoshi and take them in a procession.
5. Winter
6. Kamakura

\*\*\*\*\*



**Answers.**

A. 1. b. space

2. c. an American

3. b. July 1969

B. a. right

b. first

c. leave

C. 1. because there is no air to breathe

2. because it supplies them with air and keeps their bodies at the right temperature

3. a Russian astronaut, the first man to orbit the earth

4. set foot on the moon for the first time

\*\*\*\*\*





4. "The monk would get up early. Rain or Sun, he ..... be always seen on the road in the morning.

- |          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| a. could | b. should |
| c. might | d. dare   |

**Ans.: a. could**

5. No house can be properly kept without a house wife. This definition of house..... include the children.

- |         |          |
|---------|----------|
| a. must | b. might |
| c. need | d. can   |

**Ans.: a. must**

6. An incorrect posture can strain our backs. This ..... be avoided

- |         |          |
|---------|----------|
| a. must | b. need  |
| c. can  | d. might |

**Ans. a. must**

7. A: The train is about to move.

B: If ..... run fast to catch the train

- |            |          |
|------------|----------|
| a. have to | b. might |
| c. may     | d. can   |

**Ans. : have to**

8. Computers can provide information on any topic with the click of the mouse. Some people .....think that they will replace the teachers in future.

- |            |          |
|------------|----------|
| a. may     | b. might |
| c. have to | d. shall |

**Ans.: may**

9. What sort of job ..... you like? In your new job you like? In your new job you may have a chance to go abroad.

- |          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| a. would | b. will   |
| c. shall | d. should |

**Ans.: would**

10. **Sickness may be defined as the unhealthy condition of body. Fevers ..... be classified into many kinds.**

- |          |            |
|----------|------------|
| a. can   | b. have to |
| c. might | d. must    |

**Ans.: a. can**

2. **Fill in the blanks choosing the right form of the verbs given in brackets.**

- i. You can ..... (see) him now.

**Ans.: see**

See, how he ..... (be+stand)

**Ans.: is standing**

His face is ..... (wrinkle)

**Ans.: Wrinkled.**

- ii. All machines require energy to make them work. This energy is ..... (supply) by fuel. Fuel ..... (exist) in various forms; Petrol and electricity, food and oxygen to mention only some.

**Ans. : supplied, exists**

- iii. My uncle ..... (have) a cow. He ..... (buy) it in the market yesterday.

**Ans. : has, bought**

- iv. Sunder ..... (be + study) in Govt. High School last year. The Govt. closed that school. So Sunder ..... (take) the transfer Certificate

**Ans.: was studying, took**

- v. Jayalakshmi is a classical singer. She ..... (earn) money by giving tuitions. She ..... (be+go) to give a concert in the Town Hall tomorrow.

**Ans.: earns, is going**

- vi. India ..... (be+rule) by foreigners for many centuries. Leaders like Gandhiji ..... (fight) for freedom. Now India ..... (be) a democratic country.

**Ans.: was ruled, fought, is**

- vii. Moments later, his father ..... (leave) the room. When he returned, his arms ..... (be) full of paints and brushes, He ..... (nod) his head but his eyes ..... (remain) sad.

**Ans.: left, were, nodded, remained**

- viii. Swami's father ..... (sit) gloomily. .... (gaze) at the newspaper on his lap. Swami ..... (rise) quietly and walked to his bed. Granny ..... (be+sit) on her bed, waiting for him.

**Ans.: sat, gazing, rose, was sitting**

- ix. Hemalatha : Menaka, ..... (Do) your husband eat sweets everyday?

Menaka : yes, he ..... (eat)

Hemalatha: Please tell him that eating sweets ..... (be) bad for health.

Menaka : He also ..... (know) But he is fond of ..... (eat) sweets.

**Ans.: Does, eats, is, knows, eating.**

- x. Kalpana informs her son Dharma Pal that she will be ..... (return) home late in the (go) to ..... (attend) a conference at Malik Hotel. Dharma Pal ..... (have) to go for his coaching classes.

**Ans.: returning, go, attend, has**

- xi. Using his utmost efforts he ..... (open) his eyes. He ..... (stare) in the darkness and ..... (see) something ..... (more)

**Ans.: opened, stared, saw, moving**

- xii. Mrs. Sappleton ..... (enter) the room and apologized for ..... (come) late. She hoped that the open window did not bother. Mr. Nuttel. She ..... (tell) him that her husband and brothers would ..... (come) home straight from shooting.

**Ans.: entered, coming, told, come**

- xiii. I ..... (argue) with him but it was useless. Finally he ..... (sign) the deed and ..... (take) the money but refused to ..... (take) more than the amount agreed upon.

**Ans.: argued, signed, took, take**

- xiv. With a desperate effort he ..... (open) his eyes. He ..... (put) his hand out to feel his granny's presence at his side as ..... (be) his habit, but he only ..... (touch) the wooden leg of the bench.

**Ans.: opened, put, was, touched**

xv. The first baby bomb was ..... (drop) on the densely populated industrial town on Hiroshima in Japan on 6<sup>th</sup> August 1945. The city of Hiroshima ..... (be+flatten). At least 78,000 people and possibly many thousands more were ..... (kill) or fatally injured.

**Ans.: dropped, was flattened, killed**

xvi. She ..... (hand) him a sack and stick also. Velu ..... (be confuse). Then Jaya ..... (explain) that she was a rag picker.

**Ans.: handed, was confused, explained**

xvii. Bepin Babu ..... (ask) his driver Sitaram to ..... (drive) by the Ganga. He ..... (regret) having paid any heed to Ghosh. Yet the incident ..... (haunt) his mind.

**Ans.: asked, drive, regretted, haunted**

xviii The social fabric ..... (be) in bad shape. Religious leaders ..... (preach) absurd practices like untouchability and child marriage. In truth Indian ..... (have) loast their self respect. The British ..... (scorn) them

**Ans.: was, preached, had, scorned**

xix I cannot ..... (forget) this day I ..... (make) my first speech in school today. Our school ..... (have + arrange) this competition.

**Ans: forget, made, had arranged.**

\*\*\*\*\*

## REPORTED SPEECH

### I Read the conversation. Based on it, Complete the reported form given below.

**Father :** Why aren't you doing your homework, Joseph?

**Joseph :** They didn't give us any home work today Daddy.

**Joseph's father asked him why**

a. ....

**Joseph replied that they had n't**

b. ....

**Ans.: a. he wasn't doing his home work**

**b. given them any home work that day.**

### II Read the passage. Report the questions given in the box and complete the story :

Bhola asked his friends ..... They said they had heard the world would come to an end the next evening. Bhola asked them ..... They said, 'The priest' .

**Ans. : Why they were so serious**

**Who had told them**

### iii. Read the conversation. Based on it complete the reported form given below:

Rajev : How are you?

Rakesh : I'm fine, you?

Rajeev : I'm fine, thank you. Why did you go to Delhi last week?

Rakesh : I went to Delhi to see the minister.

Rajeev asked Rakesh why ..... Rakesh replied that .....

**Ans. : he had gone to Delhi previous week. He had gone to Delhi to see the minister.**

iv. Preethi : Will you please help me to cross the road?

Bharathi : I will help you to cross the road.

Preethi asked Bharathi whether ..... Bharathi replied that .....

**Ans. :** She would help her to cross the road.

She would help her to cross the road

v. Chand : Hello, Prashant

Prashant : How are you?

Chand : I'm fine. Thank you. Are you working in this company?

Prashant : Yes, I am. I joined this firm last year.

Chand and Prashant greeted each other. Chand asked Prashant ..... Prashanth replied he was and he .....

**Ans. : If he was working in that company had joined that firm the previous year.**

vi. Child: I want a balloon, which I can release into the air.

Balloon man : Which colour balloon do you want?

A child told a balloon man that .....

The balloon man .....

**Ans. : a. he wanted a balloon which he could release into the air**

**b. asked which colour balloon he wanted**

vii. Son : Why are they asking for money, mummy?

Mother : It is because they are poor, darling

On seeing the beggars the son .....

When the mother replied that .....

**Ans. : a. asked his mother why they were asking for money**

**b. it was because they were poor**

viii. Husband : Did you talk to the doctor?

Wife: Yes, It is important for you to rest.

**Ans. : Tom was admitted in a hospital with a complaint of tumour. He was resting. A few minutes later, he asked his wife .....**

**She .....**

- a. If she had talked to the doctor
- b. replied in positive and told him to rest

ix. Captain : Do you know how to play cricket?

Laksh : Never had a chance to learn it.

The captain asked Laksh .....

Laksh replied .....

**Ans. : a. if he knew how to play cricket  
b. that he had never had a chance to learn it**

x. Nishchu : Hi Lakshya how are you?

Lakshya : Life's rather tough. I need a job.

Nishchu on meeting Lakshya asked .....

Lakshya replied .....

**Ans. : a. how he was  
b. that he was on the look out for a job**

xi. Mother : I have washed the car for you today

Daughter : Thank you, Mom

The mother told the daughter that .....

The daughter .....

**Ans.: a. she had washed the car for her that day also  
b. thanked her mother**

xii. Boss : Are there any more files?

Peon : Yes sir

Boss asked the peon .....

The Peon .....

**Ans.: a. if there were any more files  
b. replied respectfully yes.**

xiii. Wife : Please stop this work immediately

Husband : I have to meet the deadline or the editor will give the work to somebody else.

The wife requested

Her Husband requested

**Ans. : a. requested her husband to stop that work  
b. replied that he had to meet.**

xiv. Astrologer : Will you give me five rupees. If you find my answers satisfactory

Customer : No

The astrologer asked the customer .....

The customer .....

**Ans.: a. Whether he would give him five rupees if he found his answers satisfactory.  
b. replied no (negatively)**

xv. Raghunandan : Hello Pammi

Pammi : How are you

Raghunandan : I am fine. When did you come back?

Pammi : I came yesterday

Raghunandan and Pammi greeted each other. Raghunandan asked ..... Ravindra replied  
.....

**Ans. : a. how she was  
b. he was fine and he had come back last night**

\*\*\*\*\*

## VOICE (PASSIVE FORM)

### a. Read the conversation

A: Have you completed the work?

B: No, not yet, we are attending to that work now.

The passive form of the underlined sentence is ..... (Choose the right one)

- a. That work was attended to now
- b. That work is being attended to now
- c. That work is attended to now
- d. That work will be attended to now

**Ans. : b. That work is being attended to now.**

### b. Choose the best alternatives which is in the passive form

#### 1. The chief guest distributed the prizes

- a. The prizes were distributed by the Chief Guest
- b. The prizes are distributed by the Chief Guest
- c. The prizes will be distributed by the Chief Guest
- d. The prizes are being distributed by the Chief Guest

**Ans.: The prizes were distributed by the Chief Guest**

#### 2. Leela has written a book

- a. A book is written by Leela
- b. A book had been written by Leela
- c. A book has been written by Leela
- d. A book will be written by Leela

**Ans. : b. A book has been written by Leela**

#### 3. Do the work

- a. Work is done by you
- b. Work was done by him
- c. Let me do the work

- d. Let the work be done

**Ans. : d. Let the work be done**

- c. Read the conversation. Choose the correct passive voice for each of the underlined sentences.**

Lakshmi : Have you written all the answers correctly?

Sharada : Yes, I have written all the answers correctly.

- All the answers are written correctly by me
- All the answers have been written correctly by me
- All the answers were written correctly by me
- All the answers are being written correctly by me

**Ans. b. All the answers have been correctly written by me**

- d. Read the conversation**

1. The government has been decided to change the pattern of question paper. It has hoped ..... The students will like the new pattern. The passive form of the underlined sentence is .....

- The new pattern will be liked by the students
- The new pattern would be liked by the students
- The new pattern can be liked by the students
- The new pattern will is liked by the students

**Ans.: b. The new pattern would be liked by the students.**

2. Mr. Jain is a rich gold merchant. Last night some thieves broke into the house of Mr. Jain. The thieves planned the robbery very carefully.

- The robbery was planned by the thieves very carefully
- The robbery will be planned by the thieves carefully
- The robbery is planned by the thieves very carefully
- The robbery is being planned by the thieves very carefully

3. A : Is there Nisha in the house

B : She is cooking food in the kitchen

**The Passive form of the underlined sentence is**

- The food is being cooked by her
- The food was cooked by her.

- c. The food are being cooked by her
  - d. The food has been cooked by her
4. A : I kept a mango here, where is it?  
B : He had eaten a mango.

**The Passive form of the underlined sentence is**

- a. A mango had been eaten by him
  - b. A mango have been eaten by I
  - c. A mango had been eaten by he
  - d. A mango has been eaten by him
5. A. did you attend the programme?  
B. Yes, I have attended the programme.

**The passive form of the underlined sentence is**

- a. The programme has been attended by me
- b. The programme has being attended by me
- c. The programme have been attended by me
- d. The programme is being attended by her.

\*\*\*\*\*

## QUESTION TAGS

### I. Add suitable question tags.

#### 1. He could play very confidently.

- a. Couldn't he?
- b. Could he?
- c. Can he?
- d. Can't he?

**Ans.: Couldn't he?**

#### 2. You cannot help others.

- a. Can he?
- b. Cann'the?
- c. Could he?
- d. Will he?

**Ans.: a. Can he?**

#### 3. She is Nishchitha.

- a. isn't she?
- b. is she
- c. does she?
- d. did she?

**Ans.: a. isn't she?**

#### 4. Raghav is singing a song.

- a. isn't he?
- b. is he?
- c. was he?
- d. wasn't he?

**Ans.: a. isn't he?**

#### 5. Latha is not reading.

- a. is he?
- b. isn't he?
- c. will he? d.
- won't he?

**Ans.: a. isn't he?**

#### 6. I work hard.

- a. Don't I?
- b. Do I?
- c. Does I?d.
- do we?

**Ans.: Don't I?**

**7. We worked hard.**

- |               |             |
|---------------|-------------|
| a. Did I?     | b. Didn't I |
| c. Didn't we? | d. Do we    |

**Ans.: c. Didn't we?**

**8. They have two books.**

- |                  |               |
|------------------|---------------|
| a. Haven't they? | b. Have they? |
| c. has she?      | d. had they   |

**Ans.: a. Haven't they?**

**9. She has written in.**

- |                  |             |
|------------------|-------------|
| a. hasn't she?   | b. has she? |
| c. haven't they? | d. had she? |

**Ans.: a. hasn't she?**

**10. He will tell us truth.**

- |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|
| a. won't he? | b. will he?  |
| c. can he?   | d. could he? |

**Ans.: a. won't he?**

**a. Let's start, now, .....?**

**The question tag to be used above is.**

- |            |              |
|------------|--------------|
| a. Can we? | b. Shall we? |
| c. do we?  | d. must we?  |

**Ans.: b. Shall we?**

**b. Read the conversation and fill in the question tag.**

Officer : Good morning, Madam

Lady : Ah, Good morning Sir

Nice day, ..... ?

(is it, isn't it, doesn't it, wasn't it)

**Ans.: isn't it**

**c. The officer drives the car. The question tag to be used for the above is**

- a. does he?
- b. doesn't he?
- c. is he?
- d. isn't he?

**Ans.: doesn't he?**

**d. Lift the table. The question tag to be used for the above is**

- a. won't you?
- b. can't you?
- c. can you?
- d. couldn't you

**Ans.: won't you?**

**e. Antony never goes to school late, .....? Fill in the blank with a question tag.**

**Ans.: does he?**

**f. I am fond of reading, .....? Fill in the right question tag**

**Ans.: amn't I? am I not?**

\*\*\*\*\*

## LINKING WORDS

Fill in the blanks using the appropriate linking words given in brackets.

(and, that, after, so)

1. The summons came from the soviet president ..... I had to go there. At the meeting, was shown a letter from the American president ....., to my surprise, ..... a few days. I was called to Geneva. The meeting was held so ..... that we could hold talks

**Ans. and, so, after, that**

2. (not only, though, but also, because)

Sir, M. Vishvesvaraya was a disciplined person. .... he was lean, he was strong in mind. At the request of the Maharaja of Mysore, he accepted the post of Chief Engineer. Later he became the Diwan of Mysore. He made a name ..... as an engineer ..... as a statesman. People of Mandya worship him ..... he got a dam built across the river Kaveri at Karnataka

**Ans.: Though, not only, but also, because**

3. (but, and, both, because)

Dr. S. Radhakrishna was ..... an educationist ..... a statesman. He served our country as the vice-president ..... the president of India. When he was about to leave Russia, Stalin invited him to his palace and said, "I am sad ..... you are going back to your country. I want to live longer ..... I may not.

**Ans.: both, and, and, because, but**

4. (and, as, because, if)

Venkatesh is a physician. Everyone likes him ..... he has a lot of patience ..... talks to the patients politely. .... any patient doesn't have money to buy medicines, he will give him money. .... he is honest ..... service minded, the Govt. has honoured him

**Ans.: because, and, if, As, and**

5. (that, but, and, though)

Radha ..... Rukmini are sisters. Radha is lazy. .... she is lazy, she is intelligent. Her father knows ..... she would get distinction in M.B.B.S.

**Ans.: and, but, though, that**

1. In March ..... April the coffee blossom time in Coorg. .... blossoms transform into berries, the bushes are cropped. The Cherry-red fruit is ..... pulped the seeds separated, dried and sent for curing. Coorg ..... Kodagu is the district which is one of the largest producers of pepper, Cardamom and honey in the world.

**Ans.: and, when, then, or**

2. More than the physical ..... mental problems, my biggest headache was my financial situation. I was getting ready for the final frontier, my father was bed ridden ..... a lot of money was needed for his treatment. .... the family had very little to offer me

**Ans.: or, when, and, so**

3. He saw a bird ..... was unlike any he had ever seen before. It had a longish tail ..... a black crest. .... the most interesting thing about the bird was its restless energy ..... he liked the bird very much.

**Ans.: that, and, but, so**

4. He found ..... there was no food at home. He became desperate by starvation. He went to an ant. He requested him to lend him a shelter from rain ..... some food. He added that ..... the ant did not do what he wanted he would die. The ant replied that the ants did not ever borrow ..... lend.

**Ans. : That, and, if, or**

5. He walked to the hotel in perfect silence, a silence ..... heavy that I could hardly breathe. The hotel seemed to be far away and ..... not far enough. That night, ..... I served her at table the temptation to touch her was overpowering ..... I had almost forgotten myself when I dropped her coffee cup.

**Ans.: So, yet, as, and**

1. Her hands reached ..... the steel railing above, but finding only air. Roma was thrown out ..... the coach. The clattering roar of ..... train muffled the thud of her fall on to the ground more than ..... metre below.

**Ans.: for, of, the, a**

2. It took months of negotiation ..... come to ..... under standing with the old man. He was ..... no hurry. What he had ..... most of the time.

**Ans.: to, an, in the**

3. They had come ..... high hopes in ..... miracles of modern science They told themselves that Anant would be cured ..... the hospital, and he would again walk and run and even take part in the forthcoming table tennis tournament. And he would play the sitar and perhaps would be ..... great satirist one day.

**Ans.: with, the, at, a**

4. Hafeez Contractor was ..... very unhappy school boy. In the first and second year he was a good student. From ..... third standard onwards, he seemed ..... have lost all in studies. He was particularly afraid ..... Mathematics.

**Ans. : a, the, to, of**

5. The English and ..... Germans were ..... war. The two armies stood ..... their respective teaches on man's land. Suddenly Macpherson saw someone waving ..... white flag from the enemy side.

**Ans.: the, at, in, a**

6. Earlier England was important ..... the author only because there was Cambridge. Now it had ..... greater appeal ..... him. He had met Stephan Hawking there during a walking tour. He is ..... successor of Issac Newton.

**Ans.: to, a, for, the**

7. There was a rumor that Gather gold looked like ..... Great Stone Face. Gather gold had the face of ..... old man ..... yellow skin. The people considered him the image ..... the Great Stone Face.

**Ans.: the an, with, of**

8. There had been ..... accident when he went hiking ..... his father and brother. They were crossing ..... rickety bridge ..... some rapids.

**Ans.: an, with, a, over.**

9. Suman and another boy turned up ..... they had finished their dinner that night. The boy staggered in ..... large newspaper – covered parcel ..... his hands. Where shall I take it? Amma : My room Okay. No I think ..... Puja room is better.

**Ans.: after, a, in, the**

10. The next day Ranji came again. He enjoyed ..... lot in the coolness of the water. After ..... hour, he lay to relax ..... the smooth rocks. It was then that he noticed a boy staring at him ..... a hostile manner.

**Ans.: a, an, on, in**

\*\*\*\*\*

## **‘WH’ QUESTIONS (MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS)**

**Frame a ‘wh’ question .**

**1. They see the P.M. in the parliament?**

- a. Where do they see in the P.M.?
- b. Were did they see the P.M.?
- c. Where did he see the P.M.?
- d. Who is the P.M.?

**Ans.: a. Where do they see in the P.M.?**

**2. Sujay and Supriya are Radha’s Cousins.**

- a. Who are Radha’s Cousins?
- b. Who were Radha’s Cousins?
- c. Who do Radha’s Cousins?
- d. Who Radha’s Cousins’ are?

**Ans.: a. Who are Radha’s Cousins?**

**3. Yoga keeps the body fit and healthy.**

**Ans.: How does Yoga keeps body?**

**4. The children love playing with Rambo.**

**Ans.: What do children love?**

**5. This novel was written in 1946.**

**Ans.: When was this novel written?**

**6. The briefcase was stolen at the station.**

**Ans.: Where was the briefcase stolen?**

**7. The books were collected by the students.**

**Ans.: By whom the books were collected?**

**8. Rajan visits temple twice a week.**

**Ans.:** How often Rajan visits temple?

**9. Students have bought 10 photos for school.**

**Ans.:** How many photos do the students brought?

**10. Jashmi took class for two hours.**

**Ans.** How long Jashmi took the class?

\*\*\*\*\*

## **‘IF CLAUSE’ (THIRD CONDITION)**

**Complete the following statements:**

- 1. I would like to buy the house. But it is costly. If the house had been cheap I would .....**

**Ans. :** have bought it.

- 2. Monsoon rains failed. Farmers couldn't grow crops.**

**Newspaper reported : If it had rained the farmers .....**

**Ans.:** could (would) have grown crops.

- 3. Shashi scored less marks in 10<sup>th</sup> Standard. So he couldn't get seat in the college. His father said If he had scored good marks .....**

**Ans.:** he would have got seat in the college.

- 4. It is raining heavily. If it had not rained .....**

**Ans.:** we would have gone for a week.

- 5. There is a function in the college. They did not invite us. If we had been invited .....**

**Ans.:** we would have attended the function

- 6. She has annual examination in the next month. She is not working hard. If she had worked hard .....**

**Ans.:** She would have passed in the exam.

- 7. they do not have money. They need it very baelly. If you had asked me .....**

**Ans.:** I would have given you.

- 8. Ram is very slow in getting ready. He has to catch the train. If Ram had not hurried .....**

**Ans.:** he would have missed the train.

- 9. Ashoka was a wise king. Now – a – days also people remember him If the kind had ruled wisely .....**

The people would have praised him.

- 10. One should have better guidance to achieve something in life.  
If we had better guidance .....**

**Ans.:** We would have achieved our goal.

**Choose the correct answer and write it. (Finite and nonfinite verbs)**

- 1. She walks home**

- |           |                 |
|-----------|-----------------|
| a. finite | b. non – finite |
| c. Gerund | d. Participle   |

**Ans.: a. finite**

- 2. She walked home.**

- |           |                 |
|-----------|-----------------|
| a. finite | b. non – finite |
| c. Gerund | d. Participle   |

**Ans.: a. finite**

- 3. He loves camping in the woods**

- |                 |               |
|-----------------|---------------|
| a. non – finite | b. infinitive |
| c. participle   | d. finite     |

**Ans.: a. non-finite**

- 4. I need to go to sleep.**

- |                 |               |
|-----------------|---------------|
| a. non – finite | b. participle |
| c. finite       | d. noun       |

**Ans.: a. non-finite**

- 5. The sleeping dog caused a delay**

- |                 |           |
|-----------------|-----------|
| a. non – finite | b. Gerund |
| c. infinitive   | d. finite |

**Ans.: a. non-finite**

- 6. I hate camping**

- |                 |           |
|-----------------|-----------|
| a. non – finite | b. finite |
| c. Adjective    | d. noun   |

**Ans.: a. non-finite**

**7. I want to go there.**

- |                 |           |
|-----------------|-----------|
| a. non – finite | b. finite |
| c. Adjective    | d. Gerund |

**Ans.: a. non-finite**

**8. We ate our roasted marshmallows**

- |                 |               |
|-----------------|---------------|
| a. non – finite | b. Adjective  |
| c. gerund       | d. infinitive |

**Ans.: a. non-finite**

**9. I live in Germany**

- |           |               |
|-----------|---------------|
| a. finite | b. non-finite |
| c. gerund | d. infinitive |

**Ans.: a. finite**

**10. We went to school at 9 a.m.**

- |           |               |
|-----------|---------------|
| a. finite | b. non-finite |
| c. gerund | d. infinitive |

**Ans.: a. finite**

\*\*\*\*\*

## SUBJECT – VERB AGREEMENT

**Choose the correct verb out of the two given in brackets:**

1. There ..... two boys standing there (is/are)

**Ans. : are**

2. There ..... many students in the school (is/are)

**Ans.: are**

3. There ..... a proper balance of emotions and intelligence in him (is/are)

**Ans.: is**

4. There ..... complete darkness inside (is/are)

**Ans.: is**

5. A new house ..... a lot of money (cost/costs)

**Ans.: costs**

6. The new car ..... very fast (run/runs)

**Ans.: runs**

7. One of the players ..... from my village (come/comes)

**Ans.: comes**

8. Every leaf ..... fallen from this tree. (has/have)

**Ans.: has**

9. One of the boys ..... punished (was/were)

**Ans.: was**

10. Bread and butter ..... his daily diet. (was/were)

**Ans.: was**

1. My friend ..... cricket (play/plays)

**Ans.:**

2. One of the pupils in our class ..... punished by our teacher (was/were)

**Ans.:**

3. Wheat, rice and barley ..... cereals (is/are)

**Ans.:**

4. His friend and benefactor ..... come to see him (has/have)

**Ans.:**

5. There ..... twelve books on the shelf (is/are)

**Ans.:**

6. There ..... a lot of people in the concert. (was/were)

**Ans.:**

7. There ..... a lot of oil in the dish. (is/are)

**Ans.:**

8. A gang of thieves ..... caught by the police (was/were)

**Ans.:**

9. There ..... a pair of shoes in the cupboard. (is/are)

**Ans.:**

10. The information we got ..... not correct. (was/were)

**Ans.:**

11. What ..... the latest news? (is/are)

**Ans.:**

12. Physics ..... my favourite subject in school (was/were)

**Ans.:**

13. Each/none/either/neither of the players ..... selected for the state team. (was/were)

**Ans.:**

14. Maria with her friend ..... sent out of the class (was/were)

**Ans.:**

## **DEGREES OF COMPARISON**

**1. Roma is the wisest girl**

**Positive degree of the above sentence is**

- a. No other girl is as wise as Roma
- b. No other girl was as wise as Roma
- c. Roma is wiser than all the other girls
- d. All girls are as wise as Roma

**Ans.: a. No other girl is as wise as Roma**

**2. No other metal is as useful as steel.**

**Superlative degree of the above sentence is**

- a. Steel is the most useful metal.
- b. Steel was the most useful metal
- c. Steel is more useful than other metals
- d. Steel is the use fullest metal

**Ans.: a. Steel is the most useful metal**

**3. Don Anselmo was the oldest man in the village**

**Comparative degree of the above sentence is**

- a. Don Anselmo was more old than any other man in the village
- b. Don Anselmo was more older than any other man in the village
- c. Don Anselmo was older than any other man in the village
- d. No other man in the village is as older as Don Anselmo

**Ans.: Don Anselmo was older than any other man in the village**

**4. Joyce is the most intelligent girl in her class**

**Positive Degree of the above sentence is**

- a. Joyce is more intelligent than any other girl in her class
- b. No other girl in her class is as intelligent as Joyce
- c. Joyce is intelligent than any other girl in her class
- d. Joyce is the intelligent girl in her class

**Ans.: b. No other girl in her class is as intelligent as Joyce.**

**5. Bengaluru is one of the most expensive cities in Karnataka**

**Comparative degree of the above sentence is**

- a. Bengaluru is more expensive than any other city in Karnataka
- b. Bengaluru is expansivest city in Karnataka
- c. No other city in Karnataka is as expensive as Bengaluru
- d. Bengaluru is more expensive than any other city in Karnataka

**Ans.: a. Bengaluru is more expensive than any other city in Karnataka**

\*\*\*\*\*

**WRITING**  
**LETTER WRITING**

You are Nikita. Your summer vacation is about to end. Write a letter to your friend Shruti, telling her which books you have read during the vacation. You can make use of the hints given below.

- was not bored
- Alice in wonderland
- Panchatantra – fables
- Stories of Tenali Rama – humour, witty
- books – best friend
- amazed

**Ans.:**

**LAYOUT OF AN INFORMAL LETTER**

Sender's Address

Date.

Salutation

.....  
.....content (Body of the letter)  
.....  
.....

Subscription

Signature

\*\*\*\*\*

**You are Sakhis/Santhosh resident of Vijayanagar. There are no street lights in your locality and this is a cause of great inconvenience. Write a letter to the editor telling him about the problems faced by the residents because of the above mentioned problem. You can make use of the hints given below.**

**Ans.:**

**LAYOUT OF A FORMAL LETTER**

Sender's Address

.....  
.....  
.....

Date.: .....

Receiver's Designation and Address

.....  
.....  
.....

Salutation .....

Subject .....

.....  
.....content (Body of the letter)  
.....  
.....

Subscription

Signature

\*\*\*\*\*

## MESSAGE

**The following is a telephonic conversation between Parul and Pritam. As Pritam has to leave for a movie, he leaves a message for his brother, Rishi, write the message**

Parul : Can I talk to Mr. Rishi?

Pritam : Sorry, he is not at home. May I know who is speaking?

Parul : I am Parul, from L and T.

Pritam : Would you like me to convey a message to him?

Parul : Yes. Inform him that the interview scheduled on March 15, 2014 has been postponed to March 17, 2014

Pritam : I will surely convey this message.

Thank you

**Ans.:**

Dear Rishii,

March 10, 2014

Parul from L&T had called. Your interview on March 15, 2014 has been postponed to March 17, 2014

Pritam  
2.30 pm

\*\*\*\*\*

**MESSAGE**

**Read the following conversation between Sunil and Utsav. Utsav is about to leave home for his tuition and will not be able to meet his father. He leaves a message for him. Write the message**

**Sunil** : Hello, Can I speak to Mr. Joshi? I am his colleague, Sunil.

**Utsav** : He is not at home. Can I take the message?

**Sunil** : I was supposed to come at seven. Please tell him I won't be able to make it today. However, I can come tomorrow at seven. If that is inconvenient, he may call me at home after nine today to fix another time. Will you give this message to him?

**Utsav** : Yes I will

**Sunil** : Thank you.

**Ans.:**

March 6, 2013

5.30 pm

Dear father,

Sunil, your colleague called up to say that he would not be able to come today. Instead of today he would come at seven tomorrow. If that is inconvenient, you may call him up at home after nine to fix another time.

Utsav

\*\*\*\*\*

## EDITING

### Examples

**In the passage given below, one word has been omitted in each line that has a blank along its side. Underline the place where you think a word has been omitted. Write the word in the space provided**

People should allowed to do what they	(a) <u>be</u>
Want, If they want ruin their	(b) <u>to</u>
Health smoking, that is their affair	(c) <u>by</u>
Anyway, it has really proved that	(d) <u>been</u>
There is definite link between smoking	(e) <u>a</u>
And cancer. For normal healthy people	
Smoking a harmful pleasure	(f) <u>is</u>

**A Paragraph is given below. It has four errors. Edit the paragraph, clues are given.**

Standing with the mountains top, an bird of happiness gave three loud cries. At the first cry, the golden sun broken through the clouds, a warm breeze came down from the sky.

### Clues:

- preposition to be corrected
- article to be corrected
- Verbal mistake to be corrected
- conjunction to be inserted

\*\*\*\*\*

## NOTICE

**You are Nisha/Nakul, Secretary of Sports and Games of Hari Vidyalaya, Mysore. The school has decided to hold an Inter School Kite-Flying Competition. Draft a notice in not more than 50 words informing the students about the same using the hints given below.**

**Class** : VIII – X

**Date** : February 4, 2014

**Venue** : School playground

**Time** : 11 a.m. to 1 p.m.

**Ans.:**

28, Jan. 2015

### KITE – FLYING COMPETITION

Our School is organizing Kite-flying Competition for the students from class VIII to X. Those who want to participate can give their names to their respective class teachers before February 1. Competition will be held in the school playground on February 4 from 11 a.m. to 1 p.m. All participants will get a certificate.

**Note:** Participants should bring their kites.

Nisha/Nakul

Secretary, Sports and Games.

\*\*\*\*\*

## NOTICE

### Examples

1. Your “Sports Club” is planning to go on a trekking expedition to Chamundi hills as the secretary of the club, prepare a notice for the school notice board giving the following information

- |   |
|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Date of the trip</li><li>2. Kit required</li><li>3. Charges for the trip</li><li>4. Whom to contact</li><li>5. Last date to register the names</li></ol> |
|---|

The School’s sports club is organizing a trekking programme to Chamundi hills. Those who are interested to take part in this programme can register your names before 1<sup>st</sup> of Oct to the secretary of the sports club. The charges for this programmes Rs.200.

### **KIT REQUIRED**

1. A. Towel 2. Water bottles c. trekking shoes etc.
2. **Draft a notice to be displayed at the entrance to a Zoo, giving details about the visiting hours, cost of tickets for adults and children etc.**
3. **As secretary of cultural club draft a notice regarding inter-class dance competition to select candidates for Prathiba Karanji.**

\*\*\*\*\*

## WRITING REPORTS

1. Complete the following news items on the basis of the headlines given above. One has been done as an examples.

**Eg.** Hud Hud Enters

Cyclone Hud, Hud made its first entry on the Coastal areas of Odisha and Andhra Pradesh causing large scale devastation of life and property.

1. Govt. renames cities
2. Prime Minister launches Swacha Bharat
3. Idols immersed in lakes

## PROFILE

**Based on the information given in the table, write a biographical Sketch**

Name	P.T. Usha
Nick Name	Payyoli Express
Date of Birth	27 <sup>th</sup> July, 1964
Place of Birth	Payyoli, Kerala
Field of Sports	Athletics running
Awards and Medals won	1. 4 gold medals and one silver medal in 1986 Asian Games 2. Padmashri and the Arjuna Award by Government of India

**Ans.:** P.T. Usha, also known as Payyoli Express was born on 27<sup>th</sup> July, 1964 at Payyoli in Kerala. She was famous athlete and had won many medals in running. She won 4 gold medals and one silver medal in 1986 Asian Games. She was conferred with Padmashree and Arjuna Award by Government of India.

\*\*\*\*\*

**Based on the information given in the table, write a biographical Sketch**

<b>Name</b>	<b>Dr. APJ Abdul Kalam</b>
Place of Birth	Rameswaram, Tamilnadu
Date of Birth	15 <sup>th</sup> October 1931
Education	Aeronautical Engineering from Madras Institute of Technology
Achievement	Project Director – Satellite Launch Vehicle III
Books Written	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Wings of Fire</li> <li>○ India 2020 : A Vision for the millennium</li> <li>○ My Journey</li> <li>○ Ignited Minds</li> </ul>
Awards and Rewards	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. 30 honorary doctorate</li> <li>2. Padma Bhushan (1981)</li> <li>3. Padma Vibhushan (1990)</li> <li>4. Bharat Ratna (1997)</li> <li>5. 11<sup>th</sup> President of Indian in 2002</li> </ol>

**Ans.:**

Dr. APJ Abdul Kalam was born in 15<sup>th</sup> October 1931 at Rameshwaram in Tamilnadu. He did Aeronautical Engineering in Madras Institute of Technology. He was the project director for Satellite Launch Vehicle III (SLV III). He has written four book – Wings of Fire, India 2020: A vision of the millennium, MY Journey and Ignited Minds. He became 11<sup>th</sup> President of India in 2002. He has 30 honorary doctorates. He was awarded Padma Bhushan (1981), Padma Vibhushan (1990) and Bharath Rathna (1997) by Government of India.

\*\*\*\*\*

## E-Mail

**Last weekend you visited your grand-mother's house and were happy. Write an e-mail to your friend describing the experience in minimum 120 words using the hints given below.**

- ◆ My favourite place
- ◆ Feel comfortable and secure
- ◆ She is a good cook
- ◆ Played games and had a lot of fun

**Ans. :**

**Date** : 15 January 2015

**From** : ashab@ gmail.com

**To** : Manjular@gmail.com

**Subject** : Experience at Grandmother's house

Dear Manjula,

Since childhood my favourite place has been my grandmother's house. I feel comfortable and secure surrounded by my grandparents, aunts, uncles and cousins. My grandmother is the best cook in the world. This time she prepared Gulab Jamoons and Onion Pakoda. It was Yummy! They were awesome. There is a swimming in the backyard of my grandma's house. I played with my cousins and had a lot of fun. I never feel like coming back from her place. Next time when I go I'll take you also.

Yours friend

Asha

\*\*\*\*\*

## ARTICLE

The traffic condition of the city is worsened. Massive traffic jams reflect the Chaotic state of traffic in Bengaluru. Write an article stating the existing state of traffic on road and suggesting ways to improve the conditions. You can take the help of the hints given below. (Word limit : 100)

- ↖ Traffic congestion – serious problem
- ↖ Thousands of vehicle, inadequate infrastructure
- ↖ Traffic jam – wastage of non – renewable fuels
- ↖ Petrol and diesel worth 100 crore – wasted everyday
- ↖ Carpool
- ↖ Use bicycles
- ↖ Use public transport

\*\*\*\*\*

**Write an invitation for the Annual Day Programme.**

SEVANIKETAN HIGH SCHOOL  
GANDHINAGAR, BANGALURU

**ANNUAL DAY INVITATION**

We Cordially invite you to the  
Annual Day Celebration of  
our School

- The Headmaster,  
Staff and Students

**Programme**

- ❖ Prayer
- ❖ Welcome Speech
- ❖ Speech by the Chief Guest
- ❖ Presidential Address
- ❖ Prize Distribution
- ❖ Cultural Programme
- ❖ Vote of Thanks

**Date** : 20.01.2015

**Time** : 4.00 p.m.

**Venue** : School Premises

Note : ❖ Please occupy your seats ten minutes before the programme begins

❖ Keep your cell phones on silent mode

\*\*\*\*\*

## VOCABULARY

### Write the opposites of (Antonyms)

1. Wrong	x	right	25. cruel	x	kind
2. foe/enemy	x	friend	26. foolish	x	wise
3. bottom	x	top	27. decrease	x	increase
4. thin	x	thick	28. worse	x	bad
5. narrow	x	broad	29. stale	x	fresh
6. weak	x	strong	30. plenty	x	few
7. lean/thin	x	fat	31. latter	x	former
8. peace	x	war	32. defeat	x	win
9. ugly	x	beautiful	33. lend	x	borrow
10. dunce/dull	x	intelligent	34. bright	x	pale
11. timid	x	brave	35. curse	x	bless
12. barren	x	fertile	36. smooth	x	hard
13. difficult	x	easy	37. dangerous	x	safety
14. fall	x	rise	38. destroy	x	perfect
15. hate	x	love	39. low	x	high
16. young	x	old	40. dirty	x	clean
17. appear	x	disappear	41. lazy	x	active
18. poor	x	rich	42. weep	x	laugh
19. full	x	empty	43. loose	x	tight
20. rude	x	polite	44. absent	x	present
21. reject	x	accept	45. sorrow	x	joy
22. flexible	x	rigid/stiff	46. rude	x	polite
23. traitor	x	patriot	47. soft	x	hard
24. suspect	x	believe	48. wet	x	dry
			49. costly	x	cheap

## II Choose the correct word: (Homophones)

1. Ravi has a bean in his pocket (been, bean)  
Deepa has been to Mysore
2. There are many children playing in the park.  
Their schools are closed for three days (there, their)
3. I go to school everyday (to, too)  
Don't drive too fast.
4. Faded clothes can be dyed (died, dyed)  
The dog died of hunger
5. The company suffered heavy loss last year.  
We have to respect the laws of our state (laws, loss)
6. You are too late (too, two)  
I have two eyes
7. This road leads to Mysore (rode, road)  
I rode a car
8. We are fond of sweets (of, off)  
The flight has taken off
9. Now a days bus fare has been raised (fair, fare)  
She is a fair looking lady
10. He is walking with bare foot (bear, bare)  
It is too sensitive to bear
11. In that film cast is not good (caste, cast)  
We should eradicate caste system
12. She has a very good eye sight (site, sight)  
I purchased a site in Mysore
13. Farmers go to dairy to give the milk (dairy, diary)  
I have a habit of writing diary
14. Hare is a cute animal (hare, heir)  
He is the only heir of that property
15. Gandhiji is an ideal person (idol, ideal)  
Indians follow idol worship

16. Everyday we pray to god (prey, pray)

Lion is waiting for its prey

17. Ramesh told me an interesting Story (story, storey)

That building has four storey

### III Combine the word in Column A with its collective word in B

A	–	B
1. Book	–	<u>worm</u> , ant, hand, pen
2. long	–	small, hen, <u>run</u> , food
3. earth	–	land, water, <u>quake</u> , sun
4. railway	–	<u>station</u> , chair, run, stop
5. post	–	book, <u>box</u> , paper, table
6. honey	–	<u>moon</u> , sun, star, earth
7. wall	–	door, table, <u>clock</u> , journey
8. blood	–	post, water, book, <u>bank</u>
9. photo	–	<u>studio</u> , table, lady, man
10. money	–	coins, letter, stamps, <u>order</u>
11. charming	–	<u>girl</u> , hot, answer, book
12. self	–	<u>discipline</u> , myself, mother, stars
13. wheel	–	stool, paper, book, <u>chair</u>
14. police	–	nurse, conductor, <u>constable</u> , stand
15. hand	–	pants, sari, socks, <u>kerchief</u>
16. twinkling	–	stars, moon, sun, earth
17. break	–	lunch, dinner, fast, last
18. freedom	–	fighter, boxer, wrestler, swimmer
19. leave	–	answer, question, letter, box
20. brisk	–	run walk, sing, dance
21. shake	–	leg, mouth, hands, eye
22. mouth	–	talking, eating, watering, licking
23. nuclear	–	land, weapon, bottle, bolt
24. speedy	–	recovery, damage, task, time

**IV The spelling of a word is jumbled write the word**

1. oyla – loyal
2. ggrade – ragged
3. dede – deed
4. baoed – abode
5. now – own
6. areg – rage
7. rcawl – crawl
8. obthre – bother
9. flitre – trifle
10. rftalret – flatter
11. lgisetn – glisten
12. lgaem – gleam
13. trmcou – tremour
14. lasoce – solace
15. zoed – doze
16. lbssening – blessing
17. stpudi – stupid
18. odutb – doubt
19. sotaliry – solitary
20. gola – goal
21. areg – rage
22. rreor – error
23. diayl – daily
24. maitbion – ambition

25. suonmm – summon

26. egare – eager

27. fare – fear

28. beonck – beckon

29. rpeytt - pretty

**V How many syllables do the following words contain**

1. accept – ac-cept =2

2. again – a-gain =2

3. canteen – can-teen = 2

4. conscience – con-sci-ence=3

5. reflection – re-flec-tion=3

6. direction – di-rec-tion=3

7. quiz – quiz – 1

8. whole – whole – 1

9. continent – con-ti-nent = 3

10. adventure – ad-ven-ture = 3

11. determine – de-ter-mine =3

12. wide – wide = 1

13. school – school = 1

14. people – peo-ple-2

15. primary – pri-ma-ry = 3

16. section – sec-tion =2

17. taller – tal-ler = 2

18. English – eng-lish = 2

19. anger – an-ger = 2

20. ago – a – go – 2

21. probability – pro-ba-bi-li-ty=5

22. determination – de-ter-mi-na-tion=5

23. idea – i-dea = 2

24. vanish – va-nish = 2

**VI Choose the correct word:**

All the students of class IX went to the stadium. Some (some, sum) of them participated in individual events, a few of them in group events and the remaining went to cheer up them in group events and the remaining went to cheer up their (there, their) friends. Rohit was a good runner. When the race (race, rays) began, all his friends knew (new, knew) that he would (would, wood) win. In the finals, Rohis won (one, won) the first prize (prize, price) and became the overall champion.

\*\*\*\*\*

## REFERENCE SKILL

### I. Arrange the following words in the order in which they are put in a dictionary

1. **advocate, advice, advert, adverb**

Ans.: adverb, advert, advice, advocate

2. **accept, accord, access, account**

Ans.: accept, access, accord, account

3. **Benzene, bend, benefit, beach**

Ans.: beach, bend, benefit, benzene

4. **comrade, complaint, complex, comfort**

Ans.: comfort, complaint, complex, comrade

5. **Cancer, candle, canteen, cancel**

Ans.: Cancel, Cancer, Candle, Canteen

6. **Certify, Cerebral, Certain, Cereal**

Ans.: Cereal, Cerebral, Certain, Certify

7. **decompose, December, Declaim, decorate**

Ans.: December, declaim, decompose, decorate

8. **early, earnest, earth, earn**

Ans.: early, earn, earnest, earth

9. **genices, gentle, general, genuine**

Ans.: general, genius, gentle, genuine

10. **hero, hermit, herself, herbs**

Ans.: herbs, hermit, hero, herself

### II. Decode the following sms into sentences:

1. **v 1 d match**

= **Ans.:** we won the match

2. **lk b4 u leap**

= **Ans.:** look before you leap

3. **2 n 2 makes 4**

= **Ans.:** Two and Two makes four

4. **pls come b4 its 2 la8**

= **Ans.:** Plase come before it is too late

5. **y r u sad?** = **Ans.:** Why are you sad?
6. **I 8 rice 4 lnch** = **Ans.:** I ate rice for lunch
7. **v r rdy 2 go** = **Ans.:** We are ready to go
8. **do d wrk n go home** = **Ans.:** Do the work and go home
9. **I cnot c d t pot** = **Ans.:** I cannot see the tea pot
10. **y day v rot d sa** = **Ans.:** Yesterday we wrote the essay
11. **v r la8 2 day** = **Ans.:** We are late today
12. **How r u?** = **Ans.:** How are you?
13. **Y R V here?** = **Ans.:** Why are we here?

\*\*\*\*\*

**Government of Karnataka  
Office of the Commissioner  
Department of Public Instruction**

Nrupathunga Road, Bengaluru - 560 001

AND

**Directorate of Urdu and other  
Minority Language Education**

Nrupathunga Road, Bengaluru - 560 001

**Co - Ordination  
Karnataka Secondary Education**

Examination Board  
Malleshwaram, Bengaluru

**SUCCESS**

X Standard  
Second Language English

**Organized by  
Sri. Mohammad Moshin**

Commissioner  
Department of Public Instruction  
Nrupathunga Road - 560 001

**Concept Developed by  
Smt. Zohara Jabeen M.**

Director  
Director of Urdu and Other  
Minority Language Education  
Nrupathunga Road, Bengaluru - 560 001

2014-15

**Co - Ordinator**  
**Smt. Manjula R.**  
Senior Assistant Director  
Directorate of Urdu and other  
Minority Language Education  
Nrupathunga Road, Bengaluru - 560 001

**Sri. Marigowda B.N.**  
Senior Assistant Director  
Directorate of Urdu and other  
Minority Language Education  
Nrupathunga Road, Bengaluru - 560 001

## **RESOURCE TEAM**

**Smt. Maria Sumangala C.**

GJC (High School), Yelwala  
Mysore Rural

**Manjula N.**

GHS Vinayakanagar  
Mysore North

**Laveena D'souza**

GJC (High School)  
Karimuddanahalli  
Hunsur Taluk  
Mysore Dist.

**Suma K.P.**

GHS  
Kanbile  
Somvarpet Taluk  
Coorg Dist.

**Joyce.L.Menezes**

GHS  
Manchegowdana Koppal  
Mysore Rural

**Asha B.**

GHS Hadinaru  
Nanjangud Taluk  
Mysore Dist

**Deena Knoble**

GHS  
Vyasrajapura  
T. Narasipura Taluk  
Mysore Dist

**Molly Verghese**

ELTC (High School)  
CTE, Mysore

## Contents

### PROSE AND POETRY

Unit - 1	A Hero	1-6
	Grandma Climbs A Tree	7-10
Unit - 2	There's a Girl By The Tracks	11-16
	Quality Of Mercy	17-20
Unit - 3	Gentlemen Of Rio En Medio	21-28
	I am The Land	29-31
Unit - 4	The Bird Of Happiness	32-37
	Laugh And Be Merry	38-42
Unit - 5	The Concert	43-49
	Jazz Poem Two	50-54
Unit - 6	The Discovery	55-63
	Ballad Of The Tempest	64-68
Unit - 7	Colours Of Silence	69-74
	The Blind Boy	75-79
Unit - 8	Science and Hope of Survival	80-83
	Off To Outer Space Tomorrow Morning	84-86

### SUPPLEMENTARY READING

1.	Narayanpur Incident	87-88
2.	On Top Of The World	89-90
3.	A Great Martyr Ever Cherished	91-92
4.	Dr. B.R. Ambedkar	93-94

### READING

Activity – 1	Poem - Homes	96-97
Activity – 2	The Sports Graph	98-99
Activity – 3	Pictures	100-101
Activity – 4	Bubble Diagram	102
Activity – 5	The Railway Time Table	103-104
Activity – 6	A Message	105-106
Activity – 7	Reading	107

Activity – 8	A Letter	108-109
Activity – 9	Report Card	110-111
Activity – 10	Map Reading	112-113
Activity 11	City Weather	114-115
Activity 12	My Class Room	116-117
Activity – 13	Thai Food Festival	118-119
Activity – 14	Japan	120
Activity – 15	Passage	121-122

### **GRAMMAR (LANGUAGE USE)**

◆	Reported Speech	129-132
◆	Voice (Passive Form)	133-135
◆	Question Tags	136-138
◆	Linking words	139-142
◆	‘Wh’ questions (Multiple Choice Questions)	143-144
◆	‘If Clause’ (Third Condition)	145-147
◆	Subject – Verb Agreement	148-149
◆	Degrees of Comparison	150-151

### **WRITING**

◆	Letter Writing	152-153
◆	Message	154-155
◆	Editing	156
◆	Notice	157-158
◆	Writing Reports	159-160
◆	E-Mail	161
◆	Article	162
◆	Annual Day Programme	163

<b>VOCABULARY</b>	164-169
-------------------	---------

<b>REFERENCE SKILL</b>	170-171
------------------------	---------

Unit - 1  
**A HERO**

**I Four alternatives are given . Choose the best alternative:**

**1. The boy who fought the tiger stayed on the tree for half – a – day - because he**

- a. wanted to watch the tiger from the tree top    b. wanted to rest for some time  
c. was waiting for help    d. did not like the tiger

**Ans.: was waiting for help**

**2. Swami’s father asked him to sleep alone in the office room as he**

- a. wanted him to catch the burglar    b. wanted him to prove that he had courage  
c. wanted him to look after the office    d. wanted him to prove that he had strength

**Ans.: b. wanted him to prove that he had courage**

**3. A burglar is a person who**

- a. enters a house to steal    b. kills a tiger  
c. writes for a newspaper    d. bites other people

**Ans.: enters a house to steal**

**4. Swami decided to sleep under the bench because**

- a. he felt it was a safe place    b. it was near the door  
c. it was not dusty    d. it was made of wood

**ans. : he felt it was a safe place**

**5. For Swami events took an unexpected turn because**

- a. his father was angry with him    b. his father read about a newspaper report  
c. his home work was not done    d. his exams were near

**Ans.: b. his father read about a newspaper report**

**6. Swami thought that the boy in the report was not a boy but a grown-up person because**



**7. Why were congratulations showered on Swami?**

**Ans.:** Swami had bitten the burglar taking him to be the devil. The burglar's cry brought Swami's father and others to the scene leading to his arrest. So congratulations were showered on Swami.

**8. Why did Swami feel relieved at the end?**

**Ans.:** The next day Swamy slept beside his granny. His father did not protect much. Swami felt relieved.

**9. How was Swami honoured by his classmates, teacher and the headmaster?**

**Ans.:** Congratulations were showered on Swami. His classmates looked at him with respect and his teacher patted on his back. The headmaster said that he was a tree scout.

**10. Do you think Swami really wanted to join the police? If not, what did he want to be?**

**Ans.:** No, Swami was not interested to join the police. He wanted to become an engine driver, railway guard or a bus conductor.

**11. "You must sleep along hereafter", said Swami's father. By doing so, what was Swami supposed to prove?**

**Ans.:** By sleeping alone, Swami was supposed to prove his courage. He was expected to show that even he has courage.

**12. What were the excuses given by Swami in order to escape from sleeping along?**

**Ans.:** Swami said that he would sleep alone from the first of next month. He also said that the office was dusty and full of scorpions.

**III Read each of the following extracts and answer the questions given below:**

**1. "Leave alone strength. Can you prove you have courage?"**

a. What was the view of Swami's father regarding courage?

**Ans.:** Swami's father felt that courage was more important than strength and age.

b. How did he want his son to prove that he had courage?

**Ans.:** He challenged his son to sleep alone in the office room.

**2. “A frightful proposition, Swami thought”**

- a. What was the frightful proposition?

**Ans.:** The frightful proposition was that Swami’s father wanted him to sleep alone in the office room that night.

- b. Why did Swami regard it as frightful?

**Ans.:** Swami used to sleep with his granny in the passage and any change in this left him trembling and awake all night.

**3. “You must sleep alone hereafter!”**

- a. Who did he usually sleep with?

**Ans.:** Swami usually slept with his granny

- b. Why did Swami’s father want him to sleep alone?

**Ans.:** Swami’s father wanted his son to prove that he had the courage to sleep alone.

**4. “Your office room is very dusty and there may be scorpions behind your law books”.**

- a. Why did Swami make this remark?

**Ans.:** Swami made this remark because he wanted an excuse for not sleeping in the office room.

- b. What does it reveal about his character?**

**Ans.:** He did not have the courage to tell his father that he was afraid to sleep alone.

**5. “He wished that the tiger had not spared the boy”**

- a. What do the underlined words imply?

**Ans.:** These words mean that he wished that the tiger had killed the boy

- b. Why did Swami have such thoughts?

**Ans.:** Swami was upset because he was asked to sleep alone.

**6. ‘Aiyo, Something has bitten me’**

- a. Why had he been bitten?

**Ans.:** Swami thought that it was the devil who had come to attack him. So, he bit him to save himself.

- b. How did the speaker suffer as a result of being bitten?

**Ans.:** The speaker shouts of pain. This brings the people of the house there leading to his arrest.

**7. The inspector said, “Why don’t you join the police when you are grown up?”**

- a. Why do you think the inspector said this?

**Ans.:** The inspector thinks that Swami was a brave boy so he said this.

- b. Do you feel Swami would be happy to do so?

**Ans.:** Swami had caught the burglar by accident. He did not want to join the police.

**8. “Congratulations were showered on Swami next day”**

- a. Why was Swami congratulated?

**Ans.:** Swami had caught one of the notorious house breakers of the district.

- b. Do you feel Swami deserves the praise? Give reason.

**Ans.:** Swami had better the burglar out of fright. He was not really a hero.

Unit - 1

**GRANDMA CLIMBS A TREE**

**I. Four alternatives are given for each of the following questions/incomplete statements. Write the correct or the most appropriate answer in the space provided**

**1. Grandma was a genius because .....**

- a. she was skilful
- b. she could climb a tree
- c. she was good
- d. she loved trees

**Ans.: b. she could climb a tree**

**2. The poet calls his grandmother .....**

- a. a brave woman
- b. a genius
- c. childish
- d. a silly woman

**Ans.: b. a genius**

**3. Poet's grandma was happier in .....**

- a. a boat
- b. a lift
- c. a house
- d. a tree

**Ans.: a. a tree**

**4. Grandma learnt to climb a tree from .....**

- a. a trainee
- b. her brother
- c. her father
- d. her son

**Ans.: b. her brother**

**5. As soon as the doctor recommended 'a quiet week in bed' for granny, all the family members .....**

- a. sighed with relief
- b. laughed happily
- c. danced with joy
- d. felt very bad

**Ans.: a. sighed with relief**

6. For granny, 'a quiet week in bed' was like .....

- |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|
| a. hell   | b. heaven |
| c. prison | d. jail   |

**Ans.: a hell**

7. Grandma wanted a house .....

- |                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| a. in a tree top | b. beside a river |
| c. on a beach    | d. in a forest    |

**Ans.: a. in a tree top**

8. My grandmother was a genius. The underlined word means .....

- |                    |                      |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| a. a tree climber  | b. an elderly person |
| c. a gifted person | d. a happy person    |

**Ans.: c. a. gifted person**

9. The opposite of 'gracefully' is .....

- |                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| a. ungracefully  | b. disgracefully |
| c. misgracefully | d. ingrately     |

**Ans.: b. disgracefully**

10. "It was like a brief season in hell" Figure of speech used in the above sentence is

- |                 |             |
|-----------------|-------------|
| a. simile       | b. metaphor |
| c. alliteration | d. paradox  |

**Ans.: a. simile**

II. Answer the following in a word or a phrase or in a sentence (one mark questions)

1. What does the poet call his grandmother?

**Ans.:** The poet calls his grandmother a genius.

2. Why does the poet call his grandmother 'genius'?

**Ans.:** The poet calls his grandmother 'genius' because, she could climb trees.

3. Who taught grandmother to climb trees?

**Ans.:** Her loving brother taught grandmother to climb trees.

**4. What was her age when she climbed the tree last?**

**Ans.:** She was sixty-two when she climbed the tree last.

**5. What did the doctor strongly recommend?**

**Ans.:** The doctor strongly recommended a quiet week in bed.

**6. What did grandma tell her son one day?**

**Ans.:** Grandma told her son to build a house in a tree top.

**7. According to poets, what was grandmother's right?**

**Ans.:** To reside in a tree is considered as grandmother's right.

**8. "My dad knew his duties" what did he think his duty was?**

**Ans.:** Poets father was a dutiful son and in accordance with grandma's wishes, he immediately started to build a house for her in a tree top.

**III Answer the following questions in two or three sentences:**

**1. What did people tell the grandmother as went by?**

**Ans.:** People told grandma that she should stop climbing trees as she grew old, and also that one should grow old gracefully

**2. What was usual in the reply given by the grandma?**

**Ans. :** Grandma was very childish in her reply. She said that she would grow disgracefully.

**3. What did the doctor recommend? How did the family members react?**

**Ans.:** The doctor recommended grandma a quiet week in bed. Family members sighed with relief.

**4. How did grandma feel while she lay in bed?**

**Ans.:** Grandma felt miserable as she lay in bed. She loved to look at the dancing leaves. For her, it was like a brief season in hell.

**5. What did she ask for as soon as she was better?**

**Ans.:** As soon as she was better, Grandma asked her son to build a house in a tree top.

**IV. Read each of the following extracts and answer the questions given below:**

**1. "Eversince childhood, said had this gift"**

a. Who does 'she' refers to?

**Ans.:** Grandma

- b. What was the gift that she had?

**Ans.:** She had the gift of climbing trees easily whether it was spreading or high.

**2. I Strongly recommend a quiet week in bed”**

- a. Who recommended bed rest?

**Ans.:** Doctor

- b. For whom was the rest recommended and why?

**Ans.:** Rest was recommended to grandma because she was ill.

**3. She sat up and said, “I’ll lie here no longer”**

- a. Who does ‘I’ refer to?

**Ans.:** ‘I’ refers to grandma.

- b. Why was the speaker forced to lie down?

**Ans.:** After the rescue, the doctor took granny’s temperature and strongly recommended her a quiet week bed.

**4. He said, “That’s all right. You’ll have what you want dear”.**

- a. Who does ‘you’ refer to?

‘You’ refers to granny.

- b. What does the speaker mean by above words?

Granny wished for a house in a tree top and his son readily agreed to fulfill her wish.

**5. “I’ll start work tonight”**

- a. Who started to start the work ?

**Ans.:** Poet’s father

- b. What was the work and why was he doing it?

**Ans.:** The work was to build a house in tree top. He wanted to do it to fulfill his mother’s wish to live on a tree.

Unit - 2

**THERE'S A GIRL BY THE TRACKS**

**I Four Alternatives are given for each of the following questions/incomplete statements. Write the correct or the most appropriate answer in the space provided.**

**1. The person who helped Roma was.....**

- a. a truck driver
- b. an auto rickshaw driver
- c. a car driver
- d. a motorist

**Ans. a. a truck driver**

**2. Roma's belongings had been found by .....**

- a. Baleshwar Mishra
- b. Dinesh Talreja
- c. a railway employee
- d. the truck driver

**Ans. a. a railway employee**

**3. "There's a girl by the tracks, "the voices cried out. The voices were of .....**

- a. railway employees
- b. train passengers
- c. truck drivers
- d. railway cops

**Ans. b. train passengers**

**4. Baleshwar Mishra was a .....**

- a. B.Com graduate
- b. marketing officer
- c. high school drop out
- d. call centre executive

**Ans. c. high school drop out**

**5. The ..... advised Baleshwar to take Roma to a nearby hospital.**

- a. truck driver
- b. cop
- c. commuters
- d. on duty physician

**Ans. d. on duty physician**

**6. Where did Baleshwar find Roma at last?**

- a. By the side of the Tracks
- b. By the side of the Road
- c. By the side of the Building
- d. On the Road

**Ans. a. By the side of the Tracks**

7. .... pulled the red chain to help the wounded girl

- a. Dinesh Talreja
- b. Vijay
- c. Baleshwar Mishra
- d. a railway employee

**Ans. c. Baleshwar Mishra**

8. The other passengers did not volunteer to help Baleshwar because

- a. they though one man was enough
- b. the train was moving too fast
- c. they were afraid of being involved
- d. they did not know Baleshwar

**Ans. c. They were afraid of being involved**

9. “Oh, I couldn’t thank him”. Baleshwar thought. The ‘him’ refers to the

- a. traffic policeman
- b. on duty doctor
- c. railway employee
- d. tempo truck driver

**Ans. d. tempo truck driver**

10. Baleshwar had revisited the spot to .....

- a. investigate
- b. look for her belongings
- c. get assurance
- d. meet someone

**Ans : b. look for her belongings**

11. Roma’s fall from the train could not be heard as

- a. people were talking loudly
- b. the train made a loud noise
- c. she fell unconscious
- d. the people in the train were busy

**Ans.: b. the train made a loud noise**

12. Baleshwar saw blood flowing out of a wound on Roma’s head and he

- a. started giving her first aid
- b. went in search of a doctor
- c. left her to her fate
- d. lifted her and made his way across the tracks

**Ans. d. lifted her and made his way across the tracks.**

13. They arrived at a small hospital where

- a. they lacked staff and equipment
- b. they refused to treat Roma
- c. they operated on Roma
- d. they found that there was no doctor

**Ans. a. they lacked staff and equipment**

**II. Answer the following questions in two or three sentences each :**

**1. How did Roma fall on the tracks?**

**Ans :** Roma had squeezed herself near the door of the crowded ladies compartment of a Mumbai local train. Suddenly she got pushed, lost her foothold and was thrown out of the coach.

**2. What did Baleshwar mishra do as soon as he saw the girl lying next to the tracks?**

**Ans :** On seeing the Girl on the tracks, Baleshwar immediately pulled the red emergency chain of the train. As the train slowed, he asked the other passengers to go with him to help the girl. No one came forward. Then Baleshwar bravely jumped off the still moving train and rushed towards the girl.

**3. Who Volunteered to help Baleshwar? How did he help him?**

**Ans :** A tempo truck driver stopped when he saw Baleshwar standing by the road holding the injured girl in his arms. He helped Baleshwar to lay the girl down in the back of his truck and drove them to a small hospital, but it lacked facilities. So he drove them to a bigger hospital where she could be treated well.

**4. How did the doctors at Divine Multi Specialty Hospital treat Roma?**

**Ans. :** The Medical Director of the hospital saw the extent of Roma's injuries and immediately admitted her to the ICU without any paper work. X-rays were taken out and the doctors found that she needed surgery. She was taken care of very well and recovered within a few days.

**5. Why did Baleshwar revisit the spot where Roma had fallen?**

**Ans. :** Roma's brother, Dinesh, had told him that her call phone and handbag were missing. Baleshwar revisited the spot where Roma had fallen. With the help of a railway employee he was able to recover some of her belongings.

**6. After Roma's recovery, what did she say about Baleshwar?**

**Ans. :** Roma was amazed to hear about the manner in which she had been rescued. She wondered how a stranger could jump off a train and risk his life for her. She could not imagine what would have happened to her if Baleshwar had not been there. She felt that she could never repay him for what he had done.

**7. "Take the girl to Airoli," Suggested the cop. But Baleshwar disagreed. Why did he do so?**

**Ans. :** Baleshwar felt that the girl needed medical help immediately. Airoli was at least 10 kilometers away and he knew of a small hospital close by. So he did not agree with the cop.

**8. Was Baleshwar right in asking Roma her name while she lay in a critical condition? Justify your answer.**

**Ans. :** Baleshwar was absolutely right in asking Roma her name. He also got from her, her brother's name and phone number. With this he was able to call her brother and inform him about Roma's accident.

**9. Baleshwar had a good memory. Do you agree with this? Give examples to support your view.**

**Ans. :** Yes, Baleshwar had a good memory. Roma had given him her brother's cell phone number and he memorized it quickly before she lost consciousness again. Thus he was able to contact Dinesh and inform him about the accident.

**10. If Baleshwar had not come forward to help Roma, what would have happened to her?**

**Ans. :** If Baleshwar had not come forward to help Roma, She would have bled to death. Luckily Baleshwar took her to the hospital in time and got her treated.

**11. "Roma Talreja tried to settle into a corner near the door in the train". Was she right in doing this?**

**Ans. :** No, it was wrong on Roma's part to settle into a corner near the door. It was very risky as there was a great rush. People were pushing each other to stand safely in less space and she could have fallen which she did.

### **III. Read the following extracts and answer the questions given :**

**1. There's a girl by the tracks!"**

a. Who cried out?

**Ans.** The train passenger

b. Why was she by the tracks?

**Ans.** She had lost her balance and was thrown out of the train.

**2. Let's go and help her.**

a. What happened there?

**Ans.** There was a girl by the tracks.

b. Why did they have to help?

**Ans.** She had fallen from the train.

**3. I hope I'm not too late.**

a. What did he have to do?

**Ans.** He had to take her to the doctor

b. Why did he hope so?

**Ans.** He knew she was hurt badly and hoped he could help her.

**4. Please help me take her to a hospital.**

- a. Whom did he request?

**Ans.** He requested the motorists who drove by.

- b. Why did he have to take her to the hospital?

**Ans.** She was hurt badly and was unconscious due to the fall.

**5. I can't imagine what would have happened if Baleshwar hadn't been there.**

- a. Why was Baleshwar there?

**Ans.** Baleshwar was there to help Roma.

- b. What would have happened?

**Ans.** She would have died on the tracks without his help.

**6. They fear getting trapped in the courts or with the police.**

- a. Who says this?

**Ans.** Baleshwar Mishra

- b. Why do they fear?

**Ans.** They fear because they may have to go to the courts or police station several times to give witness leaving their job.

**7. "I can never repay Baleshwar"**

- a. Who is Baleshwar?

**Ans.** Baleshwar is a young man who helped Roma.

- b. Why can't she repay?

**Ans.** He has done a great deed. He saved her life from dying.

**8. "Chacha, can I borrow your mobile?"**

- a. Who wanted the mobile?

**Ans.** Baleshwar

- b. Why did he want the mobile?

**Ans.** To inform Roma's brother, Dinesh about her accident.

\*\*\*\*\*

Unit - 2

**QUALITY OF MERCY**

**I. Four alternatives are given for each of the following questions/incomplete statements. Write the correct or the most appropriate answer in the space provided.**

**1. The poet says that the quality of mercy is twice blessed because**

- a. it is sent from heaven
- b. it is the mightiest
- c. it is an earthly power
- d. it blesses both the giver and the taker

**Ans. d. it blesses both the giver and the taker**

**2. It droppeth as the gentle rain from heaven. Here droppeth from heaven means**

- a. given to heaven
- b. as far as heaven
- c. as pure as given from God
- d. very impure

**Ans. c. as pure as given from God**

**3. His sceptre shows ..... Here 'Sceptre' can be identified with**

- a. a poor man
- b. a teacher
- c. a king
- d. a minister

**Ans. c. a king**

**4. A decorated road carried by a king as a symbol of power is called a**

- a. throne
- b. crown
- c. robe
- d. sceptre

**Ans. d. sceptre**

**5. According to the speaker, in king's. mercy is seated in the**

- a. heart
- b. head
- c. shoulders
- d. mouth

**Ans. a. heart**

**II. Answer in a word/a phrase/a sentence each :**

**1. Mercy is compared to something in the first two lines of the poem. What is it?**

**Ans. :** It is compared to the gentle rain from heaven.

2. **The speaker says that mercy is twice blessed? What does she mean by this?**

**Ans. :** Mercy blesses the giver and the taker too.

3. **“Sceptre shows the force of temporal power” In contrast, what or whose quality does mercy stand for?**

**Ans. :** Mercy is divine and flows from the heart

4. **Mention the three things of temporal power of a king.**

**Ans. :** Throne, Crown and Sceptre.

5. **When does earthly power show divine power?**

**Ans.:** When kings adopt mercy with justice.

### III. Answer the following in 2 or 3 sentences each:

1. **Mercy is compared to gentle rain from heaven. How is this comparison apt?**

**Ans. :** As the gentle rain falls on the earth, so also when mercy is shown it blesses the giver and the taker and given comfort.

2. **The speaker compares the power of the king with the power of mercy, saying that mercy is the mightiest of the mightiest. How does she justify this?**

**Ans. :** The king who has sceptre in his hand evokes a feeling of fear in the minds of others but the king who has a feeling of mercy in his heart possesses divine quality of mercy.

3. **The poem ‘Quality of Mercy’ has fourteen lines. But it is not a sonnet. Justify the statement.**

**Ans. :** This poem consists of fourteen lines but it is not a sonnet as there is no rhyme, scheme in the poem. In other words there isn't three quatrains and a couplet.

### IV. Read the following extracts and answer the questions given below:

1. **It droppeth as the gentle rain from heaven upon the place beneath. It is twice blest”**

a. What is compared to the gentle rain from heaven?

**Ans. :** Mercy

b. Why does the speaker feel it is twice blest?

**Ans.:** According to the speaker, the person who shows mercy and the person who receives mercy is also blest

2. **His sceptre shows the force of temporal power, The attribute to awe and majesty.**

a. How does the sceptre show temporal power?

**Ans.:** The sceptre creates fear among people.

- b. In contrast, what quality does mercy stand for?

**Ans.:** Mercy stands for divine quality and it flows from the heart.

**3. 'Its mightiest in the mightiest'**

- a. Who is mighty?

**Ans.:** Mercy

- b. How is it mighty?

**Ans.:** Quality of Mercy is more powerful than all the symbols of power on earth.

**4. It is an attribute to God himself.**

- a. What is this attribute?

**Ans.:** Quality of Mercy

- b. Why is it a quality of God?

**Ans.:** God is all merciful and anyone on earth who preaches it is like God.

**5. It blesseth him that gives, and him that takes**

- a. How does it bless the one who gives?

**Ans.:** The giver gets the blessing as he has helped the other person.

- b. How does it bless the one who takes?

**Ans.:** The taker is blest because he is forgiven

**6. Mercy is above the Sceptred sway.**

- a. What is a Sceptre?

**Ans.:** It is a decorated rod carried by monarchs.

- b. How is mercy above the Sceptred sway?

**Ans.:** Mercy is a divine quality or Godly power whereas Sceptre is an earthly temporal power.

**VI. Quote from memory the poem 'Quality of Mercy' (8 lines only)**

The quality of mercy is not strain'd;  
 It droppeth as the gentle rain from heaven  
 Upon the place beneath, It is twice blest:  
 It blesseth him that gives, and him that takes.  
 'Tis mightiest in the mightiest; it becomes

The throned monarch better than his crown.  
 His sceptre shows the force of temporal power,  
 The attribute to awe and majesty,  
 Wherein doth sit the dread and fear of kinds;  
 But mercy is above this sceptred sway;

It is enthroned in the heart of kings;  
It is an attribute to God himself;  
And earthly power doth then show likest God's  
When mercy seasons justice.

**- William Shakespeare**

\*\*\*\*\*

Unit - 3

**GENTLEMEN OF RIO EN MEDIO**

**I. Four alternatives are given. Choose the best alternative.**

**1. It took months of negotiation to come to an understanding with the old man because he**

- a. could not hear properly
- b. could not understand the language
- c. was not in a hurry
- d. did not like the Americans.

**Ans. : c. was not in a hurry**

**2. The old man was .....**

- a. understanding
- b. quick
- c. unhurried
- d. witty

**Ans.: c. unhurried**

**3. ‘The old man removed his hat and gloves, slowly and carefully’. This reminds us the actions of .....**

- a. Chaplin
- b. janitor
- c. Senator
- d. Prince Albert

**Ans. : a. Chaplin**

**4. The word “innumerable kin” means that the old man had a number of .....**

- a. children
- b. trees in his orchard
- c. relatives
- d. followers

**Ans. : c. relatives**

**5. In the meeting of the old man and the Americans, they talked about rain and the old man’s large family. It was .....**

- a. to mock his large family
- b. to break the ice
- c. to make everyone know that it had not rained in that area
- d. to know more about the old man’s family

**Ans.: b. to break the ice**

**6. “Don Anselmo”, I said, “We have made a discovery”. The discovery was that the old man .....**

- a. did not own the trees
- b. had asked for a high price
- c. had many relatives
- d. owned more land than he thought

**Ans.: d. owned more land than he thought**

**7. The old man had agreed to sell the land for .....**

- a. twelve hundred dollars
- b. twelve thousand dollars
- c. seven hundred dollars
- d. seven thousand dollars

**Ans. : a. twelve hundred dollars**

**8. When the story teller offered the old man double the price he .....**

- a. jumped with joy
- b. stood up in anger
- c. took off his gloves
- d. bowed to all in the room

**Ans.: b. stood up in anger**

**9. After the survey, the Americans were willing to pay .....**

- a. twelve hundred dollars
- b. thrice the amount they had agreed
- c. almost twice the money they had agreed
- d. half of the money they had agreed

**Ans. : c. almost twice the money they had agreed**

**10. Don Anselmo agreed to sell the land for the Americans because**

- a. they have agreed to give twice the amount
- b. they are his friends
- c. they are good people
- d. they agreed to buy the land without trees

**Ans.: c. they are good people**

**11. Don Anselmo signed the deed .....**

- a. after taking twice the amount
- b. but refused to take more than the amount agreed upon
- c. without taking any money
- d. after demanding more money.

**Ans.: b. but refused to take more than the amount agreed upon**

**12. A piece of land where fruit trees are grown is called .....**

- a. a cottage
- b. a forest
- c. an orchard
- d. a creek

**Ans. c. an orchard**

**13. Don Anselmo took only twelve hundred dollars for the land finally because .....**

- a. Don Anselmo was a man of principles.
- b. the story teller failed to convince Don Anselmo to take more money
- c. the Americans refused to give more money
- d. the surveyor had fixed the amount for the land as twelve hundred dollars

**Ans. a. Don Anselmo was a man of principle**

**14. Dom Anselmo sold his land but he didn't sell his .....**

- a. Orchard
- b. trees
- c. horse
- d. river

**Ans. : b. trees**

**15. According to Don Anselmo, the real owners of the trees were .....**

- a. Don Anselmo himself
- b. the Americans
- c. the children of Rio en Medio
- d. the story teller

**Ans.: c. the children of Rio en Medio**

**16. Don Anselmo did not sell the trees because .....**

- a. trees were like children to him
- b. he thought they did not belong to him but to the children
- c. he had grown them in memory of his ancestors.
- d. he wanted his surroundings to be green

**Ans.: b. he thought they did not belong to him but to the children**

**17. The story teller spoke Spanish because .....**

- a. The story teller loved to speak Spanish
- b. Spanish is the official language in New Mexico
- c. Spanish is the official language in America
- d. He doesn't know any other language except Spanish

**II. Answer the following questions in two – three sentences each:**

**1. Describe the old man's property.**

**Ans.:** The old man's house was small, wretched but quaint. His Orchard was gnarled and beautiful. The little creek ran through his land.

**2. Where did Don Anselmo live? What work did he do?**

**Ans.:** Don Anselmo lived in a small, quaint house in Rio en Medio. He tilled the land belonging to his ancestors.

**3. Explain briefly the appearance and manners of Don Anselmo?**

**Ans.:** Don Anselmo wore an old, green faded coat. His gloves too were old and torn and his finger tips showed through them and carried a cane which was the skeleton of a worn – out umbrella. When he entered the room he bowed to all and slowly removed his hat and gloves.

**4. How did the old man greet the people who had been waiting for him?**

**Ans.:** The old man bowed to all of them in the room. He then removed his hat and gloves, slowly and carefully.

**5. What did the Americans speak about with Don Anselmo to break the ice?**

**Ans.:** The Americans spoke about rain and Don Anselmo's family to break the ice.

**6. What did the Americans discover after the survey?**

**Ans.:** After the survey, the Americans discovered that Don Anselmo owns more than eight acres of land which extends across the river.

**7. The story teller offered the old man almost the double of what he had quoted earlier. Why?**

**Ans.:** The story teller offered the old man almost the double of what he had quoted earlier because he discovered that Don Anselmo owns more than eight acres of land which extends across the river.

**8. What was the reaction of the old man to the story teller's offer?**

**Ans.:** The old man hung his head for a moment in thought, stood up and stared at the story teller's offer.

**9. After the survey why did the Americans offered double the quoted price for the old man's land.**

**Ans.:** The Americans were good people and when they found that Don Anselmo owned more than eight acres of land, they offered to pay double the price they had quoted earlier.

**10. Why did the story teller fail to convince Don Anselmo to accept more money?**

**Ans.:** The story teller failed to convince Don Anselmo to accept more money because Don Anselmo felt that he was insulted by the offer.

**11. Why do you think the Americans wanted to buy Don Anselmo's land?**

**Ans.:** The little creek ran through the land of Don Anselmo. His orchard was gnarled and beautiful. So, to lead a happy and peaceful life. The Americans wanted to buy Don Anselmo's land.

**12. Why did the story teller say that Americans bueana gentla?**

**Ans.:** The story teller said that the Americans are bueana gentla because they did not want to cheat Don Anselmo and they were willing to pay Don Anselmo twice the money for his land.

**13. Why do you think Don Anselmo did not sell the trees in the Orchard?**

**Ans.:** Don Anselmo planted a tree for every born child and so the trees in the Orchard belongs to the children of Rio-en-Medio. Hence Don Anselmo could sell only the Orchard but not the trees in the Orchard.

**14. How do you say that Don Anselmo was generous?**

**Ans.:** Don Anselmo was generous. Because he was a man of principles he refused to take the extra money offered by the Americans for his land.

**15. What did the story teller's friends complain?**

**Ans.:** The story teller's friends complained that the children of the village were over running the property purchased by them. The children came everyday, played under the trees and took blossoms.

**16. What changes did the Americans make to Don Anselmo's property? OR What were the changes made on the ranch after it was sold?**

**Ans.:** The Americans replastered the old house, pruned the trees and patched the fence.

**17. What did Don Anselmo do as he left the place with money?**

**Ans.:** Don Anselmo shook hands all around, put on his ragged gloves, took his cane and walked out with the boy behind him.

**18. What did the story-teller request Don Anselmo to do after the complaint?**

**Ans.:** The story teller told Don Anselmo that according to the deed, the Americans had complete possession of the property, but the children of the village over ran the orchard everyday. So, he requested Anselmo to stop the children from doing this so that the Americans could live in peace.

**19. What was Don Anselmo's reply to the story teller's request?**

**Ans.:** Don Anselmo replied that he had sold his property to the Americans because they were good people, but he did not sell them the trees.

**20. Why was the story-teller unable to convince the old man?**

**Ans.:** The Story-teller was unable to convince the old man because the old man insisted that he had sold the property and not the trees which belonged to the children. So, he had not taken double the price fixed for the land.

**21. Whose argument do you agree with? Don Anselmo's or the story teller's? Give reasons. (Open ended question) (Ans. is suggestive)**

**Ans.:** I agree with Don Anselmo's stuck to his principles that he had sold only the land and not the trees which belong to the children of the village. His argument was stronger than the story teller.

**III. Read the following extract and answer the questions given below:**

**1. “It took months of negotiation to come to an understanding with the old man”**

- a. What was the negotiation about?

**Ans. :** The negotiation was about the selling of the old man’s land.

- b. Why do you think it took months to come to an understanding?

**Ans.:** It took months to come to an understanding because the old man was in no hurry to sell

**2. ‘The old man removed his hat and gloves carefully’**

- a. Who is the old man referred here?

**Ans.:** The old man is Don Anselmo

- b. Whose style did it remind the writer of?

**Ans.:** It reminds the style of Charlie Chaplin

**3. “We have made a discovery”**

- a. What did they discover?

**Ans.:** They discovered that Don Anselmo owns more than eight acres of land

- b. What was the result of the discovery?

**Ans.:** As a result, they offered Don Anselmo double the price of what they had quoted earlier

**4. “These Americans are Buena gente”**

- a. What is the meaning of Buena gente according to the context?

**Ans.:** Buena gente means good people

- b. Why did the speaker called Americans Buena gente?

**Ans.:** The speaker called Americans Buena gente because after the survey, they did not cheat Don Anselmo and were ready to pay twice the money they had quoted earlier for the additional land.

**5. He said, “I do not like to have you speak to me in that manner”**

- a. What is the mood of the speaker?

**Ans.:** The speaker felt that he was being insulted

- b. What made him to react so?

**Ans.:** He said these words when the Americans offered him twice the money they had quoted earlier for his land.

**6. “I have agreed to sell my house and land for twelve hundred dollars and what is the price?”**

- a. When did the speaker say this?

**Ans.:** The old man said this when the Americans offered him double the price that had been quoted earlier for his land.

- b. What does this statement tell about the speaker?

**Ans.:** This statement tells that the speaker was not greedy and he was a man of principles.

**7. Don Anselmo said “I did not sell them the trees in the Orchard”.**

- a. Why didn't he sell the trees in the orchard?

**Ans.:** According to Don Anselmo he didn't sell the trees because the trees belong to the children of Rio-en-Medio

- b. How did Don Anselmo defend his statement?

**Ans.:** Don Anselmo defended that when a child was born in the village, a tree was planted and so the trees belonged to the children of the village.

**8. “The trees in that Orchard are not mine”.**

- a. According to Don Anselmo, who did the trees belong to?

**Ans.:** According to Don Anselmo, the tree belonged to the children of Rio-en-Medio

- b. Why did he feel so?

**Ans.:** He felt so because everytime a child was born in the village, he had planted a tree for that child.

\*\*\*\*\*

Unit - 3  
**I AM THE LAND**

**I Four alternatives are given. Choose the best alternative and write in the space provided.**

**1. “I am the land. I wait.” Here ‘I wait’ suggests the feeling of**

- a. annoyance
- b. joy
- c. patience
- d. disgust

**Ans.: patience**

**2. “A chain line necklace  
Chokes me now” Here ‘chain line necklace’ refers to**

- a. a garland
- b. a fence
- c. trees
- d. grass

**Ans.: a fence**

**3. “You cannot put a fence  
Around the Planet Earth” The speaker here is showing a tone of**

- a. weakness
- b. patience
- c. excitement
- d. self assertion

**Ans.: self assertion**

**4. Which line tells that the earth is asserting itself?**

- a. you shout, I lie patient
- b. you say you own me
- c. you cannot put a fence around the planet earth
- d. you buy me

**Ans.: You cannot put a fence around the planet earth.**

**II. Answer the following questions in a word/phrase/a sentence**

**1. Who do you think is the speaker of the poem ‘I am the land’?**

**Ans.: The speaker is ‘mother earth’.**

**2. “You cannot put a fence around the planet earth” What is the tone of the speaker?**

**Ans.:** It is the tone of self assertion.

**3. “I wait” is repeated in the poem. What quality of the speaker is highlighted?**

**Ans.:** The word “I wait” highlights the speaker’s patience.

**4. Who is the speaker referring ‘you’ in the poem ‘I am the land’?**

**Ans.:** ‘you’ in the poem are the people/human beings.

**III. Answer the following questions in 2-3 sentences.**

**1. “I wait” is repeated five times in the poem. What quality of the speaker is highlighted with this repetition?**

**Ans.:** Human beings are troubling the earth. They say that they own the lands proclaim that the land is theirs. Mother earth has an ocean of patience and bears all the cruelty committed by man.

**2. Bring out the contrast between the speaker and the reader in the poem, “I am the land”.**

**Ans.:** The speaker in the poem is land. It says that it is always patient and bears all that is done to it. The reader uses the land in many ways. He digs the land, grows fruits and trees and even fights for land.

**3. What are the activities which go on over the land?**

**Ans.:** Man buys land, digs land and plants trees, grows fruit on it. Children dance and play on land. Man also fences and makes boundaries over the land.

**4. “You cannot put a fence  
Around the planet Earth”**

**Is this a tone of weakness or self assertion? Give reason for your answer.**

**Ans.:** It is a tone of self assertion. The poet mocks at those who are greedy. They wage wars to acquire more land. The earth has given everything to us. Whatever injustice we are doing, the earth bears everything patiently. We cannot put a fence around the mother earth.

**IV. Read the following extracts and answer the questions given.**

**1. “Then someone  
tickles me, plant life ..... fruit”**

**a. What does tickle mean in the context?**

**Ans.:** According to the context tickle mean to plough the land.

**b. What is the mood of the speaker in the statement?**

**Ans.:** The mother earth waits patiently when the people plough the land, plant, trees and grow fruits.

**2. “You come with guns  
a chain link necklace chokes me now”.**

- a. Why do they come with guns?

**Ans.:** The soldiers come with guns fighting for the land.

- b. What is the feeling of the speaker?

**Ans.:** People fight with guns for the land and mother earth feels suffocated with the action of men.

**3. “You cannot put a fence  
Around the planet earth”**

- a. What is the tone of the speaker here?

**Ans.:** It is a tone of self assertion

- b. Why does it feel so?

**Ans.:** The speaker mocks at the people who wage wars and build fences on the land to divide nations.

\*\*\*\*\*

Unit - 4

**THE BIRD OF HAPPINESS**

**I. Four alternatives are given for each of the following questions/incomplete statements. Write the correct or the most appropriate answer in the space provided.**

**1. The people of the poor area in Tibet believed that .....**

- a. happiness must exist somewhere in the world
- b. happiness will never exist
- c. happiness has nothing to do with people.
- d. happiness is not needed.

**Ans.: a. happiness must exist somewhere in the world**

**2. The bird of happiness was guarded by .....**

- a. two monsters
- b. three monsters
- c. one monster
- d. none of them

**Ans.: b. three monsters**

**3. The way Wangjia was sent to find the Bird of Happiness was in accordance with the ..... the people.**

- a. rules that govern
- b. wishes of the people
- c. habit of
- d. custom of

**Ans. : Custom of**

**4. Wangjia decided not to go back home because**

- a. people at home were waiting for him to bring back happiness
- b. people at home were waiting for him to return with gifts

- c. people were angry on him
- d. he wanted to live on the mountain.

**Ans. : a. people at home were waiting for him to bring back happiness**

**5. The third monster made Wangja lose his .....**

- a. food
- b. strength
- c. eyesight
- d. health

**Ans.: eyesight**

**6. The second monster blew off wangjia's .....**

- a. eyeballs
- b. food
- c. strength
- d. dress

**Ans.: b. food**

**7. It was believed that the three monsters could kill a man by .....**

- a. simply blowing through their beards
- b. turning everything into a desert
- c. turning the road into a vast scene.
- d. pulling out his eyeballs

**Ans. : a. simply blowing through their beards**

**8. Though Wangjia's feet cut to pieces, he continued his journey because he knew that people at home .....**

- a. were waiting to punish him for giving up
- b. were waiting for him to bring back happiness
- c. would no longer give him food
- d. would not call him a hero.

**Ans.: b. were waiting for him to bring back happiness**

**9. The third monster asked Wangjia to**

- a. kill Lousang's mother
- b. kill the old man Silong

- c. bring the bind's head
- d. bring Bhima's eye balls

**Ans.: d. bring Bhima's eye balls**

**10. The old folk used to say that happiness was a beautiful .....**

- a. tree
- b. mountain
- c. bird
- d. flower

**Ans. : c. bird**

**11. Wangjia refused to kill Lousang's mother because .....**

- a. he loved Lousang's mother
- b. he loved his own mother
- c. he was frightened to kill her
- d. he decided to disobey the monster

**Ans.: b. he loved his own mother**

**II. Answer the following questions in 2 or 3 sentences each.**

**1. What did the people in the poor area in Tibet suffer from OR**

**How can you say that the people in the poor area of Tibet were unhappy?**

**Ans.:** The poor area had no rivers or good land, no warmth or fresh flowers, no trees or green grass. The people suffered from hunger and cold all year round. So they were unhappy.

**2. What did the old folk of Tibet say about happiness?**

**Ans.:** The old folk used to say that happiness was a beautiful bird. It lived far away, on a snowy mountain in the east. Wherever the bird flew, happiness went with it.

**3. "Will I ever make it?" Why did Wangjia feel so?**

**Ans.:** In anger, the first monster blew through his beard and the smooth road became a vast scree. Every stone on it was as sharp as a knife. As Wangjia walked on it his boots got torn. His feet got cut. His hands were torn to pieces. The journey was very tough. So, he thought if he would ever make it.

**4. How was Wangjia made to suffer by the second monster?**

**Ans.:** The second monster blew through his beard. His bread bag flew into the sky. The blue mountains and green rivers turned into a desert. Wangjia suffered with no food. At first his stomach rumbled with hunger, his head swam and got sharp pain in his guts.

**5. What changes came over Wangjia as the Bird of Happiness caressed him?**

**Ans.:** As the bird of Happiness caressed Wangjia, his eyeballs flew back to their sockets, he saw much more brightly than before. All his wounds were healed and he was stronger than ever.

**6. Why did Wangjia decide not to go back?**

**Ans.:** Though the journey was very tough, Wangjia decided not to go back. He knew that the people at home were waiting for him to bring back happiness.

**7. What did the third monster warn Wangjia?**

**Ans.:** The third monster warned Wangjia that if he wanted to see the bird of Happiness. If he failed, the monster, would gouge out Wangjia's eye balls.

**8. How was the last journey of Wangjia different from the previous ones?**

**Ans.:** In the previous journey, Wangjia had his eyesight and was able to see his path. But in the last journey, he did not have eyesight. His eyeballs were gouged out by the third monster. He had to move groping his way with his hands on the ground.

**9. Why did the people offer Wangjia a number of things?**

**Ans.:** The girls of the village offered him barley wine. The mothers spread barley grains on his head. It was Tibetan custom to wish him a good journey.

**10. What brought hope to Wangjia's life?**

**Ans.:** Wangjia climbed up the peak of a snow covered mountain. There he heard the voice of the Bird of Happiness. Wangjia was filled with joy.

**III. Read the following extracts and answer the questions given.**

**1. "Every year people went to look for this bird, but not one of them did ever return"**

- a. Which bird did the people go to look for?

**Ans.:** The people went to look for the Bird of happiness.

- b. Why did they not return?

**Ans.:** The bird of happiness was guarded by three old monsters who could kill a man by simply blowing through their long beards.

**2. “But I am fond of my own grandpa and I’ll never kill another man’s!”**

- a. When did Wangjia say this?

**Ans.:** Wangjia said this when the second monster asked him to kill the old man Silong.

- b. What do these words show about his character?

**Ans.:** These words show that Wangjia was not only brave but was also kind at heart.

**3. “This must be the last ordeal” he thought.**

- a. What was the last ordeal the speaker had to face?

**Ans.:** When the third monster blew through his beard, Wangjia’s eyeballs jumped out of their sockets and he became blind.

- b. How did he face it?

**Ans.:** He continued his journey, groping his way with his hands on the ground. He climbed the peak of the mountain where the bird of happiness lived.

**4. “I love my own mother, and I’ll never kill another person’s” said Wangjia.**

- a. Who does Wangjia call as another person’s mother?

**Ans.:** Lousang’s mother

- b. What made him say these words? Or

Why was he not ready to kill another person’s mother?

**Ans.:** The first monster asked Wangjia to kill Lousang’s mother. He refused to do so because he loved his own mother very much.

**5. “My lovely child, have you come here for me?”**

- a. Why does the speaker say “lovely child”?

**Ans.:** The speaker said ‘lovely child’ because he had reached there by undergoing many hardships.

- b. Why did he want to meet the speaker?

**Ans.:** Wangjia wanted to meet the speaker, because he wanted to bring happiness to his people in the village

**6. Overwhelmed with joy, Wangjia replied “Yes, I have! My people long to see you day and night”. Please come back with me!”**

a. Who do the people long to see?

**Ans.:** The people long to see the bind of happiness

b. Why do the people long to see it day and night?

**Ans.:** The people in the poor area did not know what was happiness. They were waiting for Wangjia to return with the bind of happiness, so that they can be happy.

\*\*\*\*\*

Unit - 4

**LAUGH AND BE MERRY**

**I Four alternatives are given for each of the following questions/incomplete statements. Write the correct or the most appropriate answer in the space provided**

**1. God made Heaven and Earth .....**

- a. to work hard
- b. for joy
- c. to show his power
- d. for no reason

**Ans.: b. for joy**

**2. In the poem “Laugh and Be Merry” the poet says, “We must treat one another like .....**

- a. friends
- b. enemies
- c. strangers
- d. brothers

**Ans.: d. brothers**

**3. “Laugh for the time is brief, a thread the length of a span”. The figure of speech used here is .....**

- a. simile
- b. Metaphor
- c. Personification
- d. Synecdoche

**Ans.: Metaphor**

**4. “Laugh till the game is played” This means that .....**

- a. We should laugh while we are playing
- b. We should laugh only at the end of the day
- c. We should be serious when we are about to die
- d. We should laugh till the end of our life

**Ans.: We should laugh till the end of our life**

**5. “He took in a rhyme**

**Made them, and filled them full with the strong red wine of his Mirth” The “He” refers to .....**

- a. The poet  
c. God
- b. Man  
d. a friend

**Ans. : c. God**

**6. In the poem “Laugh and Be Merry” ..... is mentioned as the evidence of happiness and merriment.**

- a. dance  
c. wine
- b. sang  
d. stars

**Ans.: sang**

**7. The poet John Masefield has compared the world to a beautiful .....**

- a. an inn  
c. dance
- b. star  
d. wine

**Ans.: a. an inn**

**8. The poet wants that we should .....**

- a. live this life happily  
c. have a positive attitude
- b. face the hardships  
d. all the above

**Ans.: all the above**

## **II Answer the following questions in a sentence**

**1. How can we better the world?**

**Ans.:** We can better the world with a song.

**2. Why should we be proud?**

**Ans.:** We should be proud because we belong to the old proud pageant of man/race of human beings

**3. According to the poet Masefield how should we live on this earth?**

**Ans.:** According to the poet Masefield, we should live on this earth as loving brothers

**4. What has the poet compared the world to in the poem “Laugh and Be Merry”?**

**Ans.:** The poet has compared the world to the rooms of a beautiful inn.

**5. Why does the poet Masefield call us as ‘guests’?**

**Ans.:** We are not immortal. We live on this earth for a short period and pass away. So, he calls us as the 'guests'.

### III Answer the following questions in 2-3 sentences

1. **Laughter not only makes us happy but will better the world also, says the poet. What does this mean?**

**Ans.:** When we laugh, we are happy and are able to make others happy. We spread joy and the world becomes a better place.

2. **Imagine a person is unjustly treated. What is the poet Masefield's advice to him?**

**Ans.:** The poet says that we should always laugh and be cheerful. People may treat us badly or unjustly but we should not lose heart. We should face the world with a smile.

3. **Why, according to the poet, has God created man?**

**Ans.:** God has created the Earth and filled it with beautiful things. God created man to enjoy the gifts of nature and fill his life with happiness.

4. **How should we find joy with the forces of nature?**

**Ans.:** The poet says that we should enjoy the beauty of the blue sky. We must fill ourselves with the light of the stars. We should work on the fertile, green land and bring joy to our lives.

5. **The poet advises us to laugh and merry. Can you think it is possible? Give examples.**

**Ans.:** Yes, it is possible. Life is short and we must make our life happier by laughing. We must be cheerful even when we face troubles. This will keep us away from all troubles.

### IV Read the following extracts and answer the questions given:

1. **“Laugh and be merry, remember, better the world with a song.  
Better the world with a blow in the teeth of a wrong”**

- a. How does the world become better; according to the poet?

**Ans.:** According to the poet, the world becomes better when we fill our lives with joy and laughter.

- b. What does he advise us to do if we are wronged?

**Ans.:** Even when we are wronged, we should not get upset. We should face the world with a smile.

2. **“Laugh, for the time is brief, a thread the length of a span”.  
Laugh and be proud to belong to the old proud pageant of man”**

- a. To what is the lifetime of a person compared?

**Ans.** The life time of a person is compared to a thread measuring a span.

- b. Why does the poet ask us to laugh?

**Ans.** Because life is short, Time is brief and we belong to the proud pageant of man.

**3. “Laugh and be merry together, like brother, akin  
Guesting awhile in the rooms of a beautiful inn”**

- a. To what does the poet compare our stay on earth?

**Ans.:** The poet says that the earth is like a beautiful inn. And we have come to stay in it as guests.

- b. How does he want us to live?

**Ans.:** We should consider all men as our brothers. We should live together in joy. Let us laugh till the day we die.

**4. ‘till the game is played’, till ‘the music ends’**

- a. What does the poet expect us to do?

**Ans.:** The poet wants us to laugh and be merry forever

- b. What do these phrases suggest?

**Ans.:** Life is compared to a game and ‘till the game is played’ refers to the end of life. ‘Till the music ends’ refers to the end of the joys of life.

**VI. Quote from memory: (8 lines)**

Laugh and be merry, remember, better the world with a song,  
Better the world with a blow in the teeth of a wrong,  
Laugh, for the time is brief, a thread the length of a spa,  
Laugh and be proud to belong to the old proud pageant of man.

Laugh and be merry: remember, in older time.  
God made Heaven and Earth for joy. He took in a rhyme.  
Made them, and filled them full with the strong red wine of his mirth  
The splendid joy of the stars; the joy of the earth.

So we must laugh and drink from the deep blue cup of the sky,  
Join the jubilant song of the great stars sweeping by,

Laugh, and battle, and work, and drink of the wine outpoured  
In the dear green earth, the sign of the joy of the Lord.

Laugh and be merry together, like brothers akin,  
Guesting awhile in the rooms of a beautiful inn,  
Glad till the dancing stops, and the lilt of the music ends.  
Laugh till the game is played; and be you merry, my friends.

\*\*\*\*\*

Unit - 5  
**THE CONCERT**

**I. Four alternatives are given for each of the following questions/incomplete statements. Write the correct or the most appropriate answer in the space provided.**

**1. Smitha is ..... years old.**

- |       |       |
|-------|-------|
| a. 12 | b. 16 |
| c. 10 | d. 14 |

**Ans.:** b. 16

**2. The maestro who was playing at Shanmukhananda Auditorium was .....**

- |                  |                        |
|------------------|------------------------|
| a. A.R. Rahaman  | b. Bismilla Khan       |
| c. Pandit Jasraj | d. Pandit Ravi Shankar |

**Ans.:** d. Pandit Ravi Shankar

**3. ‘It’s the chance of a life time’, said Ananth. What was the chance of a lifetime?**

- a. play sitar
- b. play with his sister
- c. attend Pandit Ravishankar’s concert
- d. go to cancer hospital

**Ans.:** c. attend Pandit Ravishankar’s concert

**4. Smitha and Ananth’s home town is .....**

- |            |             |
|------------|-------------|
| a. Bombay  | b. Gangapur |
| c. Lucknow | d. Delhi    |

**Ans.:** b. Gangapur

**5. Ananth was suffering from .....**

- |                  |                 |
|------------------|-----------------|
| a. hypertension  | b. tuberculosis |
| c. hepatitis – B | d. cancer       |

**Ans.:** d. cancer

**6. Smitha’s family moved to Bombay .....**

- a. so that Ananth could learn Sitar
- b. so that Ananth could learn tennis
- c. so that Ananth could be treated at the Cancer hospital
- d. so that Ananth could attend concerts.

**Ans.:** c. so that Ananth could be treated at the Cancer hospital

**7. In Bombay Ananth and his family stayed .....**

- a. with Aunt Sushila
- b. in an independent apartment
- c. in a hostel
- d. in a hotel

**Ans.:** a. with Aunt Sushila

**8. “They did not voice their fears”. Who does the word ‘they’ stand for?**

- a. doctors
- b. friends
- c. family members
- d. neighbours

**Ans.:** c. family members

**9. The great wizard of music, who played Tabla with Pandit Ravi Shankar was .....**

- a. Ustad Allah Rakha
- b. Zakir Hussain
- c. Amjad Alik Khan
- d. A.R. Rehman

**Ans.:** a. Ustad Allah Rakha

**10. “Suddenly a daring thought came to her” What was the daring thought?**

- a. ask music maestros to play for her brother in her house
- b. to take Ananth to the music concert
- c. to take Ananth to cancer hospital
- d. to go to the concert with her father

**Ans.:** a. ask music maestros to play for her brother in her house

**11. ‘He actually raised himself up without help’ she said with a catch in her throat. The underlined phrase shows that**

- a. she had cold and cough
- b. someone had caught her by the throat
- c. she was filled with grief
- d. she had tied something round her throat

**Ans.:** c. she was filled with grief

**12. “You know he needs all the sleep and rest he can get” Smita’s mother said this because the boy .....**

- a. had worked all night
- b. had just finished his examination
- c. had come back from a long trip
- d. was very ill and weak

**Ans.:** d. was very ill and weak

**13. “Take him home. Give him the things he likes” The doctors said this because .....**

- a. Anant had been completely cured
- b. they knew he had not many days to live
- c. there were too many patients in the hospital
- d. Anant gave them too much trouble

**Ans.:** b. they knew he had not many days to live

**14. “They had come with high hopes”. Their hopes were that .....**

- a. they could get ticket to the concert
- b. Pandit Ravi Shankar would come to their house
- c. the doctors would be able to cure Anant
- d. they could stay with Aunt Sushila

**Ans.:** c. the doctors would be able to cure Anant

**15. ‘You must not bother him with such a request’. The request was .....**

- a. requesting Ravi Shankar to come to her house and play Sitar for Ananth
- b. requesting the doctors to treat Ananth
- c. requesting father to take Ananth to the concert
- d. requesting aunt Sushila to allow them to stay in her house

**Ans.:** a. requesting Ravi Shankar to come to her house and play Sitar for Ananth

**16. “We perform for the boy’ who said this?**

- a. Ustad Allah Rakha
- b. Pandit Ravi Shankar
- c. Mustachioed man
- d. Organizer

**Ans.:** b. Pandit Ravi Shankar

**II. Answer the following questions in two or three sentences each:**

**1. Why did Smitha get excited after reading the newspaper?**

**Ans.:** Smitha got excited after reading the newspaper because it had the news of Pandit Ravi Shankar’s music concert at the Shanmukhananda Auditorium the next day.

**2. Why do you think the mother cautioned the girl?**

**Ans.:** Smitha’s brother, Anant had been struck with cancer. He was very sick and was lying on the bed. So the mother cautioned Smitha not to disturb Ananth.

**3. Why did Smita’s family move to Bombay?**

**Ans.:** Smita's brother Ananth was suffering from cancer. They moved to Bombay from their native town Gaganpur, so that he could be treated at the cancer hospital in the city.

**4. For a moment, Smitha had forgotten something. What was it?**

**Ans.:** For a moment, Smitha had forgotten that Ananth was very ill and not in a position to go to the concert.

**5. In what way was the truth frightening to Smitha?**

**Ans.:** Though Smitha and her family had pretended Anant would get well, she had known that Anant was going to die of cancer. This was frightening to Smitha.

**6. Do you consider Anant a talented boy? Justify your answer.**

**Ans.:** Yes, Anant was a talented boy. He was the best table – tennis player in the school and the fastest runner. He was learning to play the Sitar and was already able to compose his own tunes.

**7. “They had come with high hopes”, what hopes did Anant’s parents have?**

**Ans.:** Anant’s parents had high hopes in the miracles of modern science. They thought that he would be cured. Then he could talk and run again and hoped that he would become a great sitarist one day.

**8. Aunt Sushila was a generous lady. How would you justify this statement?**

**Ans.:** Whenever Smita’s family came to Bombay for Anant’s treatment they stayed in Aunt Sushila’s house. Her apartment was small but there was always room for them. By this we can say that Aunt Sushila was a generous lady.

**9. What did the doctors say to Anant’s parents? Were they words of hope or words of despair?**

**Ans.:** The doctors asked Anant’s parents to take him home and give him whatever he liked. They were the words of despair because his parents realized that he had not many days to live.

**10. What was the chance of a lifetime for Ananth?**

**Ans.:** Ananth was a music lover and was also learning to play sitar. Listening to Sitar maestro’s music and attend his concert was the chance of lifetime for Anant.

**11. What was the daring thought that came to Smita?**

**Ans.:** Requesting the music wizard to come home to play Sitar for Anant was the daring thought that came to Smita.

**12. How did Smitha enjoy the concert?**

**Ans.:** Smitha was spellbound by the music. As the first notes came over the air, she felt as if the gates of enchantment and wonder were opening. But every beat of Tabla reminded her of Anant’s voice.

**13. Do you think of Response of music maestros was unusual? Justify your answer.**

**Ans.:** No, the response of music maestros was not unusual because any person with good heart and is compassionate towards others sorrows would do the same.

**14. The neighbour's could not believe their eyes. Why do you think they felt like this?**

**Ans.:** The neighbour's could not believe their eyes when they saw music maestros get down from the taxi in front of their blocks because they never expected such famous people to heed to the request of a small girl to fulfill her brother's wish.

**15. Did Pandit Ravi Shankar and Ustad Allah Rakha keep their promise? If yes, how?**

**Ans.:** Yes, Pandit Ravi Shankar and Ustad Allah Rakha kept their promise. Next day they went to Anant's house and played for the boy.

**16. Do you like the ending of the story? Why? If you don't, how would you like to end it?**

**Ans.:** No, because I don't like sad ending. I would like to see Anant getting cured and back to his earlier days like playing table tennis and sitar.

**17. In the course of the story 'The Concert', whom do you consider to be more worried, Smita or Anant?**

**Ans.:** In the story, Smita was more worried than others. Though attending the concert was a chance of lifetime, she could not enjoy it completely because Anant was not with her. She was always thinking how to fulfill Anant's wish.

**III. Read the extracts and answer the questions that follow.**

**1. "You'll wake him up. You know he needs all the sleep and rest he can get"**

a. Who was sleeping?

**Ans.:** Anant was sleeping

b. Why does he need rest?

**Ans.:** Anant was suffering from cancer and had become very weak. So he needed rest.

**2. "We musn't miss the chance"**

a. What chance did the boy not like to miss?

**Ans.:** The boy did not like to miss the chance of attending Pandit Ravishankar's music concert.

b. Why is he so eager to make use of it?

**Ans.:** The boy himself was a sitar player. He was suffering from Cancer and was very ill. He thought he might not get another chance, so he was eager to make use of it.

**3. "Take him home. Give him the things he likes, indulge him".**

- a. Who said the above statement?

**Ans.:** Doctors who were treating Anant.

- b. Why did they say so?

**Ans.:** Anant's condition grew worse with each passing day and the doctors knew that the boy had not many days to live. This made them to say so.

**4. "A walk in the park might make you feel better".**

- a. Who suggested a walk in the park?

**Ans.:** Aunt Sushila suggested a walk in the park.

- b. How was her mood in the park?

**Ans.:** Smita felt alone in the midst of people who were walking, running, playing etc. She was lost in her thoughts.

**5. 'But they did not voice their fears'**

- a. What did Anant's parents fear?

**Ans.:** Anant's parents feared that the boy had not many days to live.

- b. How did they behave towards him?

**Ans.:** They laughed, talked and surrounded Anant with whatever made him happy. They fulfilled his every need.

**6. 'Panditji is a busy man. You must not bother him with such requests'**

- a. Who was bothering Panditji?

**Ans. :** Smitha

- b. What was the request made?

**Ans.:** The request was made to Pandit Ravishankar to come to the house and play for Anant.

**7. They could not believe their eyes. 'It is ..... It's not possible?' they said.**

- a. Who could not believe their eyes?

**Ans.:** Neighbours could not believe their eyes

- b. Why couldn't they believe their eyes?

**Ans.:** They couldn't believe their eyes because Pandit Ravishankar and Ustad Allah Rakha came to Aunt Sushila's house to play for Anant.

**8. 'Enjoy yourself, lucky you!'**

- a. Who is considered as lucky?

**Ans.:** Smitha is considered as lucky

b. Why is she lucky?

**Ans.:** She is lucky because she was going to attend the music concert of Pandit Ravi Shankar, with her father. But Ananth could not go because of his ill health.

**9. “No, how can I? We’ve always done things together”.**

a. Who has done the things together?

**Ans.:** Anant and Smitha

b. Why is it not possible now?

**Ans.:** It was not possible now because Anant had cancer and was confined to bed. He could not go anywhere with Smitha.

\*\*\*\*\*

**JAZZ POEM TWO**

**I Four alternatives are given for each of the following questions/incomplete statements. Write the correct or the most appropriate answer in the space provided**

**1. “ ..... his run-down shoes have paper in them”. This suggests the Jazz player .....**

- a. had come running
- b. was poor
- c. was a good sportsman
- d. kept his notes in his shoes

**Ans. b. was poor**

**2. “ ..... his wrinkled old face so,  
Full of the weariness of living”**

**These lines shows that the Jazz player was .....**

- a. an old man full of life
- b. old but cheerful
- c. an old man tired of living
- d. tired of his wrinkles

**Ans. c. an old tired of living**

**3. The musical instrument mentioned in the poem ‘Jazz Poem Two’ is .....**

- a. flute
- b. tabla
- c. saxophone
- d. Sitar

**Ans. : c. Saxophone**

**4. “ ..... he is no longer a man, no not even a Black man”. What else is he? ....**

- a. a preacher
- b. a bird
- c. a white man
- d. an ancient mariner

**Ans. : a bird**

**5. “ ..... now preaching it with words of screaming notes and chords”. These lines suggests that the Jazz player .....**

- a. was shouting very loudly
- b. had an old Saxophone

- c. wanted to be louder than other players
- d. wanted to convey a message through his music

**Ans. : d. wanted to convey a message through his music**

**6. “there he stands, see?**

**Like a black Ancient Mariner ..... “**

**Name the figure of speech in the above sentence .....**

- a. personification
- b. simile
- c. metaphor
- d. paradox

**II. Answer the following questions in a word/phrase or a sentence each :**

**1. What is Jazz player is compared to in the two lines of the poem?**

**Ans. :** Jazz player compared to a black Ancient Mariner

**2. Why do you think the Jazz player keeps his head down?**

**Ans :** Jazz player keeps his head down because his life his full of wearies.

**3. What does each wrinkle on the Jazz players face show?**

**Ans.:** Each Wrinkle on the face of the Jazz player’s face shows pain

**4. Why do you think the Jazz player has been sent here?**

**Ans.:** Jazz player has been sent here to spread the message of God.

**5. What is the Jazz player supposed to be when he plays music?**

**Ans. :** Jazz player is supposed to be a bird when he plays music.

**6. What did the Jazz player have in his shoes?**

**Ans.:** The Jazz player had paper in his shoes.

**III Read the extracts and answer the questions that follow:**

1. “his run down shoes have  
paper in them and his  
rough unshaven face shows  
pain in each wrinkle”

- a. why do the shoes have paper in them?

**Ans.:** The Jazz player is a poor man this shoes are old and torn and he has put paper in them to be able to wear them.

- b. What does the description of the face suggest?

**Ans.:** The Jazz player's face is unshaven which suggests that he does not care for his appearance. He has led a hard life so his face in wrinkled.

2. **“gently he lifts it now  
To parted lips, see? To  
tell all the world that  
he is a Black man”**

- a. What does he lift?

**Ans.:** He lifted an old saxophone.

- b. What message does he want to convey?

**Ans.:** Through his music, he wishes to convey the message of God to his listeners.

3. **“he is no longer a man. no not even a Black man. but (Yeah!)  
A Bird”**

- a. **When is he no longer man?**

**Ans.:** As the Jazz player begins to play on his Saxophone he is a changed man.

- b. **What do these lines suggest?**

**Ans.** The Jazz player may be a poor old man, but when he plays he seems to go higher and higher like a bird. He can capture hearts through his music.

#### **IV Answer the following questions in two or three sentences:**

1. **Give a short description of the Jazz player**

**Ans. :** The Jazz player has wrinkled old face. He is unshaven and has a tired look. He wears a faded blue shirt, old necktie and jacket. His shoes too are old and worn out.

2. **Why do you think the Jazz player keeps her head down?**

**Ans. :** The Jazz player is a poor, old man. He has led a hard life. He is tired and keeps his head down.

3. **The word ‘old’ has been repeated several times in the first two stanzas.**

**Ans. :** Everything about the man is old his face, his clothes and his shoes. He appears to be a pathetic figure.

**4. What message does the Jazz player want to convey?**

**Ans.:** The Jazz player wants to convey to the world that he is Black man who can draw people towards him through his music.

**5. How does the Jazz player change as he plays on the saxophone?**

**Ans.:** As the Jazz player starts to play on the Saxophone he is no longer an old Black man. He produces wonderful music and appears to be like a bird flying higher and higher.

**6. How has the Jazz player held his instrument?**

**Ans.:** The Jazz player has held his instrument across his chest. It is supported by a wire coat hanger from his neck.

**7. 'He is no longer a man' says the poet. Who else is he supposed to be if he is no longer a man?**

**Ans.:** The Jazz player forgets everything when he plays the music to preach the world. At that moment he feels like a bird which gathers his wings and flies higher and higher.

\*\*\*\*\*

Unit - 6  
**THE DISCOVERY**

**I. Four alternatives are given. Choose the best alternatives: (MCQ)**

**1. “The Santa Maria will be lighter for his carcass”. These words were said by**

- |          |                   |
|----------|-------------------|
| a. Diego | b. Francisco      |
| c. Pedro | d. Guillermo Ires |

**Ans.: d. Guillermo Ires**

**2. “A Good sailor knows his place”, says Columbus to Diego. This statement is**

- |                            |                        |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| a. a piece of advice       | b. an indirect command |
| c. an expression of sorrow | d. a cry of horror     |

**Ans.: b. an indirect command**

**3. Columbus feels that his worst enemy is**

- |                            |                     |
|----------------------------|---------------------|
| a. the angry sea           | b. his vision       |
| c. his uncontrolled tongue | d. the sailors song |

**Ans.: c. his uncontrolled tongue**

**4. The dialogue between Columbus and Pedro in section 2 reveals this train of Columbus.**

- |                              |                 |
|------------------------------|-----------------|
| a. dictatorial attitude      | b. quick temper |
| c. hatred towards the seamen | d. selfishness  |

**Ans.: b. quick temper**

**5. Pepe is always eager to say that he is ever ..... to Columbus**

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| a. loyal       | b. disobedient |
| c. disloyal d. | unfaithful     |

**Ans.: a. loyal**

**6. ‘Who’s to put him in irons?’ challenges Guillermo.**

**The person meant by ‘him’ in this context is:**

- a. Guillermo
- b. The first man to move towards Columbus
- c. Columbus
- d. The first man who challenged Columbus

**Ans.: a. Guillermo**

**7. Columbus set out from Spain to**

- a. for a long holiday
- b. to become a new world
- c. to discover a new world
- d. to make new friends

**Ans.: c. to discover a new world**

**8. Columbus said that he had discovered one thing. It was**

- a. there were no butts to discipline
- b. A good sailor knows his place
- c. God's will was his will
- d. A man with a vision has to follow it alone.

**Ans.: d. A man with a vision has to follow it alone**

**9. "Your best cannot be bettered", says Columbus. This implies that**

- a. No one is perfect at anytime
- b. There is always scope for improvement
- c. Once we reach the best, we cannot improve
- d. Columbus is not totally happy with Francisco

**Ans.: d. Columbus is not totally happy with Francisco**

**10. 'I will perform it myself', says Columbus. What does 'it' mean here?**

- a. To navigate the ship forward
- b. To put Guillermo Ires in irons.
- c. To turn back the helps towards Spain
- d. To stop the seamen singing

**Ans.: b. To put Guillermo Ires in Irons**

**11. After 'a perceptible Pause', who grows more mutinous than others?**

- a. Pedro
- b. Guillermo
- c. Diego
- d. Francisco

**Ans.: c. Diego**

**12. "Everybody doubts ..... except me" says .....**

- a. pearo
- b. pepe
- c. Diego
- d. Juan Pation

**Ans.: b. pepe**

**13. Columbus says, “would God important desire to solve mystery and he doesn’t provide solutions? The mood of Columbus in saying this.**

- a. Desperate
- b. Trust/Faith in God
- c. Angry
- d. Helplessness

**Ans.: b. Trust/faith in God**

**14. The seamen were desperate because**

- a. they were tired and wanted to return to their homes and families
- b. there was a storm in the sea
- c. they were tortured by the captain
- d. the food in the ship was exhausted.

**Ans.: a. they were tired and wanted to return to their homes and families.**

**15. “Your duty is to obey me as mine is to obey the Royal Sovereigns of Spain who sent me”. These words prove that**

- a. Columbus was very loyal to the king and queen.
- b. Columbus was mutinous
- c. Columbus was reluctant
- d. Columbus was cruel

**Ans.: a. Columbus was very loyal to the king and queen.**

**II. Answer the following questions in two or three sentences each:**

**1. What is termed as his worst enemy by Columbus?**

**Ans.:** Columbus feels that his uncontrolled tongue is his worst enemy.

**2. Give a short description of the appearance of Columbus.**

**Ans.:** Columbus was a tall, well build man of forty six. His hair was prematurely white, fair complexion and ruddy.

**3. Complete the table of physical features of Columbus described in the text.**

<b>Ans.</b> Physique	Tall, well built
Age	forty six
Hair	Prematurely white
Complexion	fair
Face ruddy,	repose

**4. The play begins with a song. What mood does this convey?**

**Ans.:** The seamen who had been away from home for a long time had not sighted land. The song shows that the seamen were desperate.

**5. ‘There are limits to patience’, says Diego. What does this suggest about Digo’s state of mind?**

**Ans.:** Diego along with the seamen were tired of the voyage and wanted to return home, but Columbus was firm and would not give up. So Digo desperately said these words.

**6. Who do you think has the lives of fifty in his hands? How?**

**Ans.:** Christopher Columbus had the lives of fifty seamen in his hands. He was their captain. The seamen were tired and wanted to return home but Columbus was firm and would not give up.

**7. What does Columbus feel his worst enemy? Why do you think he feel so?**

**Ans.:** Columbus feels that his uncontrolled tongue is his worst enemy. Columbus was a man who lost his temper soon and was easily irritated. He would often speak rudely to his men which made them angry towards him.

**8. ‘Mutiny is an ugly word’, says Diego. Is mutiny an ugly word? If so, why?**

**Ans.:** Yes, Because mutiny leads to destruction. Mutiny curbs the development of determination, tolerance and faith in God.

**9. How does Pedro try to defend the drunken seamen? Was he right in defending them?**

**Ans.:** Pedro defending that the drunken seamen were simple men and wanted to relax by drinking as they did not have the same vision as Columbus.

Pedro was not right in defending the seamen because their drinking was leading to unruly behavior.

**10. Columbus was always furious when he heard the seamen’s song. Why did it make him angry?**

**Ans.:** The song expressed the seamen’s love for drinking which was a sign of their deep discontent. Columbus was angry because they did not understand what he was trying to achieve.

**11. Columbus feels that whatever he does, it is God's will. What will of God does he like to fulfill through this venture?**

**Ans.:** Columbus felt that it was the will of God that he should discover a new world which would bring wealth to his country and help them to bring new souls on the path to God.

**12. Columbus says, "Would God implant desire to solve mystery and he doesn't provide solutions?" Identify the mood of Columbus in saying this?**

**Ans.:** Columbus had been sailing for many days not yet sighted land. His men were turning against him. But Columbus felt that if God had sent him he would surely help him find a way. These words shows that he had faith in God.

**13. Whose company did Pepe prefer? What was the reason for this?**

**Ans.:** Pepe preferred to be in the company of Columbus because he had faith in Columbus vision.

**14. Pepe warns Columbus about some people. Who are they?**

**Ans.:** Pepe warns Columbus about the other sailors because they drank too much and were going against Columbus.

**15. How did the seamen show their anger towards Columbus?**

**Ans.:** The seamen rushed in an angry mass towards Columbus growling like wild animals.

**16. "Discipline knows no buts" what made Columbus say this?**

**Ans.:** Columbus wanted to punish Guillermo Ires, who had disobeyed Columbus. So he ordered that Guillermo should be brought to him. Francisco tried to protest, against this. Columbus then said these words.

**17. Why do the Crewmates of Columbus feel desperate?**

**Ans.:** After sailing for so many days, Columbus and his men could not sight a land. They were tired and wanted to return to their homes and families. But Columbus would not give up. So they were desperate.

**18. 'I will perform it myself', says Columbus. What does 'it' mean here?**

**Ans.:** 'It' means to put him in irons for the first man to move towards Columbs.

**19. 'Devil's track to nowhere', says Guillermo. What does this suggest about the thinking of the seamen?**

**Ans.:** The seamen felt that Columbus was perhaps possessed by the Devil. He was risking their lives and taking them on a voyage which would take them nowhere.

**20. How did Pepe prove his loyalty to Columbus?**

**Ans.:** Pepe was the only person who had faith in Columbus and tried to warn him about how desperate the others had become. When the seamen rushed to kill Columbus, Pepe stood before them with his arms spread out and told them that they would have to kill him first. His loyalty put the others to shame.

**21. “This is a voyage of discovery”. What had Columbus set out to discover?**

**Ans.:** Columbus had set out to discover a new world, where he would find new wealth and a new territory for his king and queen to rule.

**22. According to Columbus, what was the one thing that he had discovered?**

**Ans.:** Columbus said that he had discovered one thing – that if a man had a vision, he must follow it alone. He should not expect loyalty, friendship, discipline or obedience from others.

**23. Pepe says, “Everybody doubts ..... except me”. Why do you think he is an exception.**

**Ans.:** Because Pepe was loyal to his captain and believed that the captain would reach his destiny when the other seamen wanted to attack him with anger.

**24. Pep excitedly declares that he is still loyal to the leaders what effect does it have on others like Juan and Guillermo?**

**Ans.:** Pepe was the only one who had the faith that Columbus would discover a new world. But the other sailors like Juan and Guillermo rebelled against him and even tried to attack him and abused Pepe when he came forward to save Columbus from being attacked.

**III Read each of the following extracts and answers the questions given below.**

**1. “A good sailor knows his place” says Columbus to Diego**

- a. Was Columbus giving to Diego a piece of advice or was it an indirect command? Give reason for your choice.

**Ans.:** Columbus wanted to point out to Diego that he had no right to be on the quarter deck. It is an indirect command.

- b. What was ‘Diego’s reaction?

**Ans.:** Diego tried to suppress his anger and with a scowl goes off from there.

**2. “The Santa Maria will be lighter for his carcass”.**

- a. Whose words was Pepe quoting here?

**Ans.:** Pepe was quoting the words of Guillermo Ires.

- b. What do the words reveal about the person who said them?

**Ans:** These words show that the speaker was so upset with Columbus that he wished he was dead.

**3. “Once clear of the Devil’s track to nowhere”, we’ll below our way back home”.**

- a. What does ‘Devil’s track to nowhere’ suggest about the thinking of the seamen?

**Ans.:** The seamen felt that Columbus was perhaps possessed by the Devil. He was risking their lives and taking them on a voyage which would take them nowhere.

- b. How did they prove to be wrong?

**Ans.:** Very soon, land was sighted and a New World was discovered. So they proved to be wrong.

**4. “Your duty is to obey me as mine is to obey the Royal Sovereigns of Spain who sent me’.**

- a. When did Columbus say these words to Guillermo?

**Ans.:** Guillermo rebelled against Columbus and demanded that they should give up their search for a new land.

- b. What do these words prove?

**Ans.:** These words prove that Columbus was not only a strong leader but was also loyal and obedient towards his kindg and queen.

**5. “Why should one man have lives of fifty in his hands?”**

- a. Who is the speaker?

**Ans.:** Diego said these words to Pedro

- b. What does the speaker mean?

**Ans.:** Diego and other seamen were becoming impatient and they wanted to return home, but Columbus was not ready to do so. Diego said these words meaning that Columbus had no right to spoil their lives.

**6. “Mutiny is an ugly word, Sir”**

- a. Why did the speaker say these words?

**Ans.:** Diego said these words in reply when Pedro asked him whether he was thinking of rebelling against Columbus.

- b. In what way the word is ugly?

**Ans.:** The word is ugly because Mutiny' is a deed which leads to destruction.

**7. "Discipline knows no buts" says Columbus**

- a. When did Columbus say this?

**Ans.:** Columbus said these words to Francisco. He asked Francisco to bring Guillermo Ires to him for speaking against him. Francisco hesitated to obey his order.

- b. What did Columbus mean to say by these words?

**Ans. :** Columbus meant that one should not hesitate to enforce discipline.

**8. "I have discovered that when a man is given a version he must follow it along"**

- a. What does these words show about the speaker?

**Ans.:** Columbus said these words which show his disappointment that no one was ready to help him reach his goal.

- b. Why did the speaker say so?

**Ans.:** Columbus said this to Pepe. When Columbus had the dream to discover a New World, but his sailors rebelled against him and even tried to attack him

**9. Pepe said, "Captain, be careful sometimes they are desperate"**

- a. Why did Pepe say these words?

**Ans.:** Pepe tried to warn Columbus that these could be danger from them anytime

- b. Why were they desperate?

**Ans.:** Pepe was the only one who had the faith that Columbus would discover a new world and the other seamen were against Columbus in desperate.

**10. "What! does that child stand between me and death?" said Columbus.**

- a. When did Columbus say this?

**Ans.:** When Columbus hears Pepe saying that he had to be killed first.

- b. What had the child done?

**Ans.:** The child (Pepe) stood in front of Columbus to protect him from being attacked by the seamen.

Unit - 6

**BALLAD OF THE TEMPEST**

**I. Four alternatives are given choose the best alternatives: (MCQ)**

**1. 'Not a soul would dare to sleep' The figure of speech used here is**

- a. metaphor
- b. personification
- c. simile
- d. synecdoche

**Ans. : d. synecdoche**

**2. A shelter for ships is known as**

- a. cabin
- b. mast
- c. harbour
- d. anchor

**Ans.: c. harbour**

**3. 'There we kissed the little maiden' The sailors did this because**

- a. she was a pretty little girl
- b. they wanted to say good bye
- c. she was the captain's daughter
- d. she filled their hearts with hope.

**Ans. : d. she filled their hearts with hope**

**4. The captain's daughter had faith that**

- a. winter should soon end
- b. god would protect them
- c. her father could save the ship
- d. she could stop the storm

**Ans.: b. god would protect them**

**5. While the hungry sea was roaring. The figure of speech employed here is**

- a. simile
- b. metaphor
- c. personification
- d. Synecdoche

**Ans. : c. personification**

**6. And the breakers talked with death. The figure of speech here is**

- |             |                    |
|-------------|--------------------|
| a. Metaphor | b. synecdoche      |
| c. simile   | d. personification |

**Ans.: d. personification**

**II. Answer the following questions in a word/phrase (VSA)**

**1. Why could not the sailors sleep?**

**Ans. :** Because the sailors were afraid that the storm would destroy the ship.

**2. Who were crowded in the cabin?**

**Ans. :** The sailors were crowded in the cabin

**3. What is a fearful thing according to the poet James T. Fields?**

**Ans. :** According to the poet, it is a fearful thing to be hit by a violent storm at sea in winter.

**4. Why was the little maiden kissed?**

**Ans.:** Because the little girl brought back hope to the sailors by saying that God would protect them.

**III. Answer the following in 2—3 sentences each:**

**1. Usually storms are formed in the deep sea. What precaution have the sailors got to take before voyage?**

**Ans.:** Before setting out on a voyage, sailors have to make sure that the ship is strong enough to withstand any storm at sea. They have to be well stocked with food and water. They need life saving jackets and be sturdy swimmers.

**2. When the captain shouted. 'We are lost'. How did his daughter react?**

**Ans.:** His daughter held his hand and gently asked if God protected us on land would he not protect us when they are on the ocean.

**3. The speaker and his crew-mates sat in darkness and prayed. What did they hear?**

**Ans.:** They heard the storm raging at sea, then the sailors sat in the darkness and prayed; The captain staggered down the stairs and shouted 'we are lost'.

4. **The crew mates kissed the maiden and spoke in better cheers. What made them feel cheerful?**

**Ans.:** The little girl asked her father if God protected them on land. Would he not protect them on the sea. Her faith in God brought hope to the sailors and they kissed her in joy.

5. **‘A ship is always safe at the shore, but it was not built for that’ what does this mean?**

**Ans.:** A ship is built to take people and goods across the seas. If it just stays on the shore it will no doubt be unharmed, but would be of no use to anyone.

6. **‘Tis a fearful thing in winter. What is referred to as a fearful thing in winter?**

**Ans.:** To be caught in a fierce storm at sea in winter is the fearful thing.

7. **What would be the condition in the deep sea during winter on the sea?**

**Ans.:** The winds would be icy cold and the water too would be freezing.

8. **The poet uses the phrase ‘the hungry sea’. What can the reader imagine from this?**

**Ans.:** The poet personifies the sea hungry because when the storm is very severe, the huge waves will drown the ship and sailors as if the sea is very hungry.

#### **IV Read the extract and answer the questions that follow.**

1. **‘We were crowded in the cabin, Not a soul would dare to sleep’**

- a. Who does the word ‘we’ refer to here?

**Ans.:** ‘We’ refer to the sailors.

- b. Not a soul would dare to sleep-why was it so?

**Ans.:** Because the sailors were afraid that the storm would destroy the ship and their lives.

2. **‘T is a fearful thing in winter’  
To be shattered by the blast”**

- a. What is to as a ‘fearful thing’?

**Ans.:** To be caught in a fierce storm at sea in winter is the fearful thing.

- b. How did it affect the sailors?

**Ans. :** The sailors lay awake saying a silent prayer in the dark.

**3. “We are lost!” the captain shouted**

- a. Why did the captain say this?

**Ans.:** The storm was very fierce and the captain feared that the ship would be torn apart any moment.

- b. How did his daughter react to the situation?

**Ans.:** His daughter remained calm. Holding her father’s hand she asked if God could protect them on land would he not protect them on sea.

**4. “Then we kissed the little maiden And we spoke in better cheer”**

- a. Who was the little maiden?

**Ans.:** The little maiden was the captain’s daughter.

- b. Why did they kiss her?

**Ans.:** The little girl brought back hope to the sailors by saying that God would protect them. So, they kissed her.

**5. “Isn’t God upon the ocean,  
Just the same as on the land?”**

- a. When did the speaker say these words?

**Ans.:** When the captain feared the ship was caught in the storm, he shouted ‘we are lost!’ then the captain’s daughter said these words.

- b. What does these words show the attitude of the speaker?

**Ans.:** Faith in God.

**VI. Quote from memory (8 lines)**

**BALLAD OF THE TEMPEST**

We were crowded in the cabin,  
Not a should would dare to sleep,  
It was midnight on the waters,  
And a storm was on the deep.  
Tis a fearful thing in winter  
To be shattered by the blast,  
And to hear the rattling trumpet

Thunder, "Cut away the mast!"  
So we shuddered there in silence, -  
For the stoutest held his breath,  
While the hungry sea was roaring  
And the breakers talked with death  
As thus we sat in darkness  
Each one busy with his prayers,  
"we are lost!" the captain shouted,  
As he staggered down the stairs .....  
But his little daughter whispered,  
As she took his icy hand,  
"Isn't God upon the ocean,  
Just the same as on the land?"  
Then we kissed the little maiden,  
And we spoke in better cheer,  
And we anchored safe in harbour  
When the morn was shining clear.

\*\*\*\*\*

Unit - 7

**COLOURS OF SILENCE**

**I. Four alternatives are given. Choose the best alternatives.**

**1. Satish did not want to go to a new school because .....**

- a. he loved his old school
- b. the new school was far off
- c. the children would make fun of his deafness
- d. his friend Surender would not be there

**Ans. c. the children would make fun of his deafness**

**2. Surender had to repeat the question three times to Satish because .....**

- a. Satish was not interested in what Surender was telling
- b. Satish could not hear properly
- c. Satish could not understand what Surender was telling
- d. Surender was speaking in a low voice

**Ans. : b. Satish could not hear properly**

**3. Satish's father argued with the head master, but in vain. The underlined phrase implies that .....**

- a. the headmaster could not hear him
- b. the headmaster was not ready to agree
- c. the headmaster was on the phone
- d. the father's voice was too soft.

**Ans. : b. the headmaster was not ready to agree**

**4. Satish Gujral is a famous .....**

- a. artist
- b. politician
- c. social worker
- d. doctor

**Ans. a. artist**

**5. "It was as if a whole world opened for Satish" This happened when he .....**

- a. opened his window
- b. started reading books
- c. fall from the bridge
- d. went to a new school

**Ans. : b. started reading books**

**6. Satish avoided going out to play because .....**

- a. children in the neighborhood teased and taunted him
- b. he was very weak to play
- c. he did not have anyone to play with
- d. doctor had advised him not to go out

**Ans. a. children in the neighborhood teased and taunted him**

**7. The bird's eyes kept moving here and there. Its body was ready for flight. This shows that the bird .....**

- a. was afraid of falling
- b. was full of energy
- c. liked Satish
- d. wanted to be painted

**Ans. b. was full of energy**

**8. Satish's father felt that artists .....**

- a. do not make much money
- b. cannot read and write
- c. are lazy and waste time
- d. make too much money

**Ans. a. do not make much money**

**9. After the unsuccessful expedition to the schools, Satish became very moody. The word 'expedition' in the above sentence means .....**

- a. journey
- b. visit
- c. mountaineering
- d. painting

**Ans. b. visit**

**10. Satish expressed his gratitude to his father by .....**

- a. telling 'thank you'
- b. hugging him tightly
- c. giving him a gift
- d. shaking hands with him

**Ans. b. hugging him tightly**

**II. Answer the following question in 2-3 sentences each:**

**1. Why was Satish confined to bed? What was the worst thing for him? Why was it so?**

**Ans.:** After the accident, Satish's legs became very weak, requiring several operations. He frequently suffered from bouts of fever and infections of the ear. So he was confined to bed. He was becoming deaf and he could not bear the silence.

**2. How did Satish meet with an accident?**

**Ans. :** On a holiday in Kashmir, Satish went hiking with his father and brother while crossing a rickety bridge over some rapids, his foot slipped and he fell into the rapids.

**3. Satish didn't want to go to a new school. What was the reason?**

**Ans.:** Satish didn't want to go to a new school where he couldn't talk to the other children, where everyone would make fun of his deafness.

**4. How did Satish's brother Inder, help him?**

**Ans.:** Inder sat with Satish for hours with him and talked to him, teaching him words and pronunciation. He spend time with him, trying to teach him things/

**5. What did Satish see at the far corner of the garden? Why did it attract him?**

**Ans. :** Satish saw a bird at the far corner of the garden. Its restless energy attracted him.

**6. Many schools refused to take in Satish. How did it affect him?**

**Ans.:** Satish became moody and could not talk freely with others. He began to avoid going out to play with the other children.

**7. What effect did the books he read have on Satish?**

**Ans.:** The books that Satish read was meant for adults. That made him feel depressed and left a deep impression upon his sensitive mind. His own world is comfortable in comparison to the world outside.

**8. Describe the bird in the garden, which attracted Satish?**

**Ans. :** The bird had a long tail and black crest. It was restless and full of energy. Its eyes moved here and there and its whole body seemed ever ready to fly.

**9. How did the beautiful bird inspire Satish?**

**Ans.:** Satish stared at the bird for a long time. After it flew away he took out his note book and pencil and made a sketch of the bird. He soon began to spend a lot of time making different sketches.

**10. Why was Satish's father against drawing?**

**Ans.:** Satish's father felt that artists do not make much money. He wanted a bright future for his son. He thought that it is possible only by studying hard. He thought drawing as waste of time.

**11. Satish's parents were both his well-wishers. But each cared for him in a different way. How?**

**Ans.:** Satish's father was optimistic and hoped that Satish's hearing would come back. Instead of wasting time on drawing, he wanted Satish to study.

Satish's mother did not have the hope that he would recover. She was happy that her son had found good pass time in drawing and she did not want to stop him.

**12. Satish's father accepted that his son's destiny lay in canvas and paint. What did he promise to do? How did Satish express his gratitude?**

**Ans.:** Satish's father promised to find out the best school of arts so that Satish could make his life in the field of his choice. Satish's eyes filled with tears and he hugged his father tightly.

**13. Do you think the school you are studying should admit students with disabilities of hearing? Give reasons.**

**Ans. :** Yes, my school should admit students with disabilities of hearing because everybody cannot afford to go to special school. Going to special school may create inferiority complex in them.

**14. How can you say that Satish became popular all over the world?**

**Ans.:** Satish Gujral is among the foremost artists in India, excelling in painting, sculpture and architecture.

**III Read each of the following extracts and answer the questions given below.**

**1. "We will have to look for a new school", his father said**

- a. why did Satish's father have to look for a new school?

**Ans.:** Due to his frequent absence and hearing problem, the school Satish was attending, informed his father that they could not keep him. So, Satish's father had to look for a new school.

- b. Satish was unhappy about this. What was the reason?

**Ans.:** Satish did not want to go to a school where he couldn't talk to other children and where they would make fun of his deafness.

**2. "You can learn a great deal of things just by reading"**

- a. Why do you think Satish's father encouraged him to read?

**Ans.:** To get on in life, Satish's father wanted Satish to read.

- b. How did reading influence Satish?

**Ans.:** As Satish began to read, it was as if a whole world opened out to him. He realized that there were others who had suffered more than him.

**3. “This is an idle pass time. You would do better to read and get some knowledge”.**

- a. What is an idle pass time according to the above statement?

**Ans.:** Drawing is an idle pass time according to the above statement.

- b. Why does Satish’s father give more importance to reading?

**Ans.:** Satish’s father thinks that by reading Satish can make something out of his life, To get on in life, one has to read a lot.

**4. “You made do this very badly, don’t you?”**

- a. What do you think made Satish’s father say this?

**Ans.:** Though his father was against it, Satish continued to draw and paint. His father realized that his son had a great love and talent for art.

- b. What did he do soon after leaving the room?

**Ans.:** He bought paints, brushes of all shapes and sizes and several rolls of drawing sheets for Satish.

**5. “You will learn arts and make your life in your chosen field”**

- a. Why did you think made Satish’s father take this decision?

**Ans. :** Though his father was against it, Satish continued to draw and paint. His father realized that his son had a great love and talent for art.

- b. How did Satish react to his father’s decision?

**Ans.:** Satish’s eyes filled with tears. He hugged his father tightly and his heart filled with love for his father.

\*\*\*\*\*

Unit - 7

**THE BLIND BOY**

**I Four alternatives are given. Choose the best alternatives.**

**1. The tone of the speakers is one of**

- |             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| a. surprise | b. curiosity |
| c. sadness  | d. helpless  |

**Ans.: b. curiosity**

**2. “I feel him warm, but how can he  
Or make it day or night”. The ‘him’ here refers to**

- |             |            |
|-------------|------------|
| a. light    | b. the sun |
| c. the moon | d. a bulb  |

**Ans.: b. the sun**

**3. “With heavy sighs I often hear  
you mourn my hapless woe”**

**who is mourning here?**

- |           |                  |
|-----------|------------------|
| a. people | b. the blind boy |
| c. sun    | d. poet          |

**Ans. : a. people**

**4. The word which does not rhyme with ‘woe’ is**

- |         |        |
|---------|--------|
| a. know | b. sow |
| c. cow  | d. sow |

**Ans. : c. cow**

**5. “then let not what I cannot have my cheer of mind destroy”. This implies that the blind boy  
is**

- a. happy though he does not have the blessings of sight

- b. happy not to have the blessings of sight
- c. unhappy because he does not see day and night
- d. jealous of people who have everything

**Ans.: a. happy though he does not have the blessings of the sight.**

**6. Whilst thus I sing, I am a king. The figure of speech used here is**

- a. metaphor
- b. alliteration
- c. personification
- d. irony

**Ans. a. metaphor**

**7. To the blind boy, the blessings of sight is**

- a. a curse
- b. a riddle
- c. a lesson.
- a pain

**Ans. b. a riddle**

**II. Answer the following questions in a word/sentence or a phrase each:**

**1. Who is the voice of the poem?**

**Ans. :** The voice of the poem is of a blind boy

**2. “You mourn my hapless woe”, who is sympathizing with whom?**

**Ans.:** The people are sympathizing with the blind boy

**3. Who do you think is the person addressed as ‘you’ in the poem.**

**Ans.:** The person who is addressed as ‘you’ in the poem is the people.

**4. What a normal person can easily understand is almost a riddle to the blind boy. What is it?**

**Ans. :** How can sun make day and night is the riddle to the blind boy.

**5. What is it that the blind boy cannot enjoy?**

**Ans.:** The blind boy cannot enjoy the blessings of sight.

**6. How do others feel about the blind boy?**

**Ans.:** Others feel sad about the blind boy.

**7. Who makes day and night of the blind boy?**

**Ans.:** The blind boy himself makes his day and night.

**8. How does the blind boy experience the Sun?**

**Ans.:** The blind boy experiences the sun by its warmth

**III. Answer the following in 2-3 sentences:**

**1. “The blessings of the sight” can you list out a few of them?**

**Ans.:** Day and night, beautiful colours, and the beauty of nature around us are the blessings of the sight.

**2. How does a blind person understand whether it is day or night?**

**Ans.:** Whenever the blind person is awake it is day, when he is asleep it is night for him. Sun does not make his day or night.

**3. How do others feel about the blind boy? What is his reaction?**

**Ans.:** People feel sorry for the blind boy and try to show sympathy towards him. The blind boy says that he does not really understand what he is missing so he does not feel that his life is miserable.

**4. How does the blind boy pacify himself?**

**Ans.:** People sympathize with the blind boy. But the boy does not want to be unhappy about what he cannot get. Though he is poor and blind, he feels rich because he is happy.

**5. What a normal person can understand is almost a riddle to the blind boy. What is it?**

**Ans.:** We can recognize day and night. The blind boy can feel the warmth of the sun, but doesn't know how the sun can make day and night because when he falls asleep it is night and whenever he is awake it is day for him.

**6. What is the message of the poem ‘The Blind Boy’?**

**Ans.:** The message of the poem ‘The Blind Boy’ is we should be happy and contented with what god has given us. We should not spoil our happiness by trying to get what we can't.

**IV Read each of the following extracts and answer the questions given below:**

**1. “I feel him warm, but how can he or make it day or night?”**

a. Who is the ‘I’ here?

**Ans.:** ‘I’ here refers to the blind boy.

- b. Whose warmth does he feel? Why does he wonder how he makes day or night?

**Ans.:** He feels the warmth of the sun. The blind boy cannot see the sun rising or setting. So he wonders how he can make day or night.

**2. “And could I ever keep awake  
With me ‘there always day”**

- a. Who is the speaker here?

**Ans.:** The blind boy is the speaker here.

- b. What is he trying to convey here?

**Ans.:** The blind boy cannot see the difference between day and night. To him it is day when he plays and night when he sleeps. So he says that if he did not sleep it would always be day for him

**3. “But sure with patience, I can bear”  
A loss I ne’ver can know”**

- a. What is the ‘loss’ the speaker cannot know?

**Ans.:** The loss here refers to the blessings of sight.

- b. How does he face the loss? What does it show about him?

**Ans.:** The blind boy does not feel sorry for what he cannot have. He bears his loss patiently and cheerfully.

**4. “Then let not what I cannot have my cheer of mind destroy”.**

- a. What made the speakers say these words.

**Ans.:** When people felt sorry for the blind boy and felt that he cannot enjoy many things, then the blind boy said these words.

- b. What was the reply of the speaker?

**Ans.:** The blind boy does not want to be unhappy about things he cannot get. He wishes to remain cheerful at all times.

**VI Quote from memory (8 lines)**

\*\*\*\*\*

Unit - 8

**SCIENCE AND HOPE OF SURVIVAL**

**I Four alternatives are given. Choose the best alternatives.**

**1. If you are so clever, why are you so poor? The ‘you’ in the statement refers more to a .....**

- a. Scientist
- b. Lawyer
- c. Doctor
- d. Businessman

**Ans. : a. Scientist**

**2. Every one on the Earth lived under the threat of annihilation by .....**

- a. Nuclear Weapons
- b. Super Powers
- c. Natural Calamities
- d. Earthquakes

**Ans.: Nuclear Weapons**

**3. “Immersion in Science does not go with common sense” suggests .....**

- a. foolishness of scientists
- b. absentmindedness of scientists
- c. that scientists do not bother about the results of their work
- d. that scientists are practical people

**Ans.: absentmindedness of scientists**

**4. The three super powers were willing to put a ban on**

- a. nuclear weapon test
- b. nuclear war
- c. possession of ammunition
- d. cold war

**Ans.: nuclear weapon test**

**5. Which of the following qualities helped the scientists to come up with a solution to the problem.**

- a. self-assessment
- b. self – praise
- c. popularity
- d. self-discipline

**Ans.: self-discipline**

## II. Answer the following in 2 or 3 sentences only:

1. **According to the author, why do some people choose to become scientists though they may not earn much money?**

**Ans.:** According to the author, some people choose to be scientists because they cannot live without science.

To them science is an adventure and the discovery made is the reward.

Instead of money they enjoy freedom, friendship and the joy of uncovering one of the mysteries of nature.

2. **Technical experts were summoned by the then Soviet Academy of sciences solve the problem. What was the problem or What was the ‘problem’ that the nuclear powers had faced? Was it a violation of the agreement or was it the detection of violation? Explain briefly?**

**Ans.:** The three super powers wanted to come to an agreement, putting a ban on the nuclear weapon test. But there was a possibility that one of the participants could secretly make an underground nuclear explosion. The problem was how the other powers could detect this violation

3. **Technical experts from the super power nations met in Geneva. Why?/What was the purpose?**

**Ans.:** The three super powers wanted to come to an agreement, putting a ban on the nuclear weapon test. And also to discuss the problems that could arise as a result.

4. **Who will be head hunted by financial institution and pharmaceutical industries? Why?**

**Ans.:** The people trained in theoretical physics are head hunted by financial institutions, those trained in frontiers of biological research became founders and directors in the pharmaceutical industry.

5. **Give a few examples which illustrate the writer’s stand that scientists are the most practical people in the world.**

**Ans.:** All new technologies, all new brands of industry are the results of research by scientists.

It is through their work that we have medicines, electronics, synthetic fibres, modes of transport and the green revolution. This proves that scientists are the most practical people.

6. **“A paradox may refer to a person, a thing or a situation that has two opposite features and therefore seems strange”. In the light of this definition how is MAD a paradox?**

**Ans.:** The agreed nations had the nuclear power signed to stop the nuclear weapons. But if any country violated the agreement and how it could be detected is the paradox.

**7. Make a list of lessons that the writer learnt at the Geneva Summit.**

**Ans.:** As a scientist, the author had people like him all over the world, who could think and interact as the author, when he is abroad, he need not feel lonely.

Science gives us hope of survival and well being for the whole mankind.

**III. Read the given extracts and answer the questions that follow:**

**1. It turned out that this problem had a direct connection with the theory of seismic waves. Underground nuclear explosions produced earth tremors very similar to those generated by earthquakes.**

- a. When did this 'problem' arise?

**Ans:** This problem arose during the Geneva Summit.

- b. What is the 'problem' referred here?

**Ans.:** The 'problem' referred here is how the powers could detect the violation of agreement.

**2. The three nuclear powers were willing to come to an agreement.**

- a. Who were the three nuclear powers?

**Ans.:** Soviet union, united states and united kingdom

- b. What was the agreement?

**Ans.:** The three nuclear powers were willing to come to an agreement putting a ban on the nuclear weapon test.

**3. At that time every man, and child on the Earth lived under the threat of annihilation?**

- a. What caused this thread?

**Ans.:** Nuclear weapons

- b. Why did everyone live under the threat?

**Ans.:** Because each super power nation seemed stronger than the other as far as nuclear weapons were concerned.

**4. "My theoretical knowledge had a direct application in the area of survival of humankind"**

- a. In which field did the author, Borok, have theoretical knowledge?

**Ans.:** The author was doing research on seismic waves and had theoretical knowledge in this field.

- b. How would it have a direct application in the area of survival of humankind?

**Ans.:** Underground nuclear explosions produced earth tremors like those generated by earthquakes. With his knowledge, the author would know the difference between the two. This would help in checking the violation of the Nuclear Test Ban agreement.

\*\*\*\*\*

Unit - 8

**OFF TO OUTER SPACE TOMORROW MORNING**

**I Four alternatives are given. Choose the best alternatives.**

**1. With what feelings is the speaker flying out of earth?**

- |                    |                           |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| a. despair         | b. Lack of Confidence     |
| c. fear of failure | d. doubt about his return |

**Ans.: d. doubt about his return**

**2. The expression “winter under lock” means, that in space**

- |                                  |                              |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| a. there is no change of seasons | b. seasons change frequently |
| c. capsules are locked in winter | d. there is no hear          |

**Ans.: there is no change of season**

**3. You can start the count Down; You can take last look; suggests .....**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| a. the end of the launching of the rocket       | b. the re-entering of the rocket to the earth |
| c. the beginning of the launching of the rocket | d. failure of the launching of the rocket     |

**Ans.: c. the beginning of the launching of the rocket**

**4. You can cross out my name from the telephone book – the poet says this because .....**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| a. he will not be coming back from space | b. he is a failure in space               |
| c. he is lost in space                   | d. he cannot have any contact with others |

**Ans.: he cannot have any contact with others**

**II. Answer the following in one sentence only:**

**1. “You can cross out my name from the telephone book” why does the poet say this?**

**Ans.:** Because he will be off to space and nobody can contact him.

**2. “In Solit’ry confinement as complete as any gaol”. In the above mentioned line what two things are compared?**

**Ans.:** Lonliness to gaol confinement

**3. Why do the tea cups circle around him?**

**Ans.:** There is no gravity in space. So tea cups circle around him.

**4. What does the poet mean by saying “There won’t be any calendar?”**

**Ans.:** The poet means that there is no count of days in space.

**III. Answer the following questions in 2 or 3 sentences:**

**1. State the reason for the poet to say ‘Calendars and clocks are useless in space?’**

**Ans.:** The poet says this because there are no seasons and no day and night.

**2. The speaker has the feeling that he is imprisoned. What might have been the reason for him to have such a feeling?**

**Ans.:** The speaker is alone and he feels lonely. He cannot have contact with anybody. No one can visit him.

**3. Give some instances of daily routine mentioned in the poem ‘Off to Outer Space Tomorrow Morning’?**

**Ans.:** Writing letters, people visiting, knocking at the door phone contact. The speaker cannot do all these things because he is in space.

**IV. Read the given extracts and answer the questions that follow:**

**1. “There won’t be any calendar, there won’t be any clock;**

a. Where is the speaker experiencing this?

**Ans.:** Space

b. Why will there be no calendars or clocks?

**Ans. :** There is no concept of time while flying through space. So there are no calendars or clocks.

**2. “With tea cups circling round me like the planets round the sun”**

a. Where would the speaker experience this?

**Ans.:** In space

b. Why does the speaker have the above feeling?

**Ans.:** There is no gravitational force in space. So everything floats.

**3. I'm off to outer space tomorrow morning?**

- a. Who is off to outer space?

**Ans.:** The speaker/the poet

- b. Why is this above line repeated several times in this poem?

**Ans.:** The poet would be alone in a world of his own. To emphasis his loneliness this above line is repeated.

\*\*\*\*\*

SUPPLEMENTARY READING  
**1. ON TOP OF THE WORLD**

**I. Answer the following in two or three sentences only**

**1. What makes you think that Dicky Dolma's life as a girl was sorrowful?**

**Ans.:** Dicky Dolma lost her mother when she was 11. She lost her elder brother too.

**2. What factors encouraged Dolma to take up basic mountaineering course?**

**Ans.:** Dolma came to know that a mountaineering institute was set up at Manali and it would give training to those who were interested in climbing mountains. Her friends and her family members also encouraged her to join this course.

**3. Dolma says, "It is not a difficult decision for me to take up the challenge of the lofty mountains" Why does she say so?**

**Ans.:** From her childhood, Dolma had been fascinated by the grandeur of the snow clad peaks of the Himalayas. Her home, in Palchan was surrounded by beautiful mountain peaks.

**4. How has Dolma described her preparedness for the task of scaling Mount Everest?**

**Ans.:** Dolma got training in the mountaineering institute at Manali. Her determination and hard work helped her to secure 'A' grades. She believed that success always follow dedication, determination and hard work. She used to practice four hours everyday before the task of scaling Mount Everest

**5. What was the biggest headache that Dolma had to face besides her physical and mental problem?**

**Ans.:** Dolma's father was bedridden. She was not financially sound and she needed a lot of money for her father's treatment, so the family had very little to offer her.

**6. What does Dolma say about mountaineering after she returns from Mount Everest?**

**Ans.:** "Mountaineering" is a tough sport. This thought never comes to me. It is my zeal for the work. Seeing peaks is a second nature to me. I have never been scared when it comes to hard work", says Dolma.

**7. What does Dolma say about the view from the top of Mount Everest?**

**Ans.:** Dolma said that an Everest can feel and understand but cannot be described in words. It was much breath taking that she could ever be imagined. The awards that she had bestowed stand very low before the view from the above.

**8. What can we learn from Dolma's life?**

**Ans.:** Whenever hurdles come, we must face them boldly. Dolma's determination and hard work, Zeal for the work is emulating.

\*\*\*\*\*

## 2. A GREAT MARTYR EVER CHERISHED

### I. Answer the following questions in 2 or 3 sentences each

1. **The writer speaks of the 'smile' that welcomes anyone who enters Hanif's house. What more do we know about this 'smile'?**

**Ans.:** Hanifuddin was a soldier. He participated in the Kargil war in 1999 and sacrificed his life for the sake of the country. He was then 25 years old.

2. **What did Hanif choose as his mission? Why did he do so?**

**Ans.:** Hanif knew that life for him was short; he wanted to serve the nation. Therefore he joined Indian Army as a soldier. He believed that a person working for the nation could change lives.

3. **Life for Hanif in the beginning was never a smooth sail. Why was it so?**

**Ans.:** Hanif lost his father when he was just eight years old. His mother a vocal artiste, was out very often with the performance wing. Therefore he became very responsible at a tender age.

4. **The absence of mother from home taught the children something. What was that?**

**Ans.:** Hanif's mother a vocal artiste, would often had to leave the children alone as she travelled with the performance wing. The kids became very responsible getting up and getting ready for school without her having told them and learnt that one's duty is the most important thing in life.

5. **Share your thoughts and impression of Hanif with your classmates.**

**Ans.:** Hanif even though he lived only for 25 years, continues to live forever in our hearts. In his short life span he became a hero by sacrificing himself in the Kargil war. Because of the hardships from a tender age, he learnt that one's duty is the most important thing in life. He often went out of his way to help people and this gave him happiness. He was a young man of varied talents and interest. Life for Hanif was always 'ekdam bindas'

6. **How does the writer describe the 'introvert' Hanif?**

**Ans.:** Hanif began to make friends at his fourteenth year of age. He often went out of his way to help people. By doing so, he derived joy.

7. **Hanif was a young man with varied talents and interest. Illustrate this statement drawing support from the text.**

**Ans.:** Haniff dabbled in art, sketched very well. He made beautiful cards out of waste material. He read books and loved playing drums.

**8. What were the dreams of Hanif? Do you think they were fulfilled?**

**Ans.:** Haniff had dreamt that he would rise up the ranks. This dream could not be fulfilled because he was killed in the Kargil war. His another dream was that a post be named after him. Those dreams came true when the sub-sector was named after him.

\*\*\*\*\*

## READING – SECTION – B

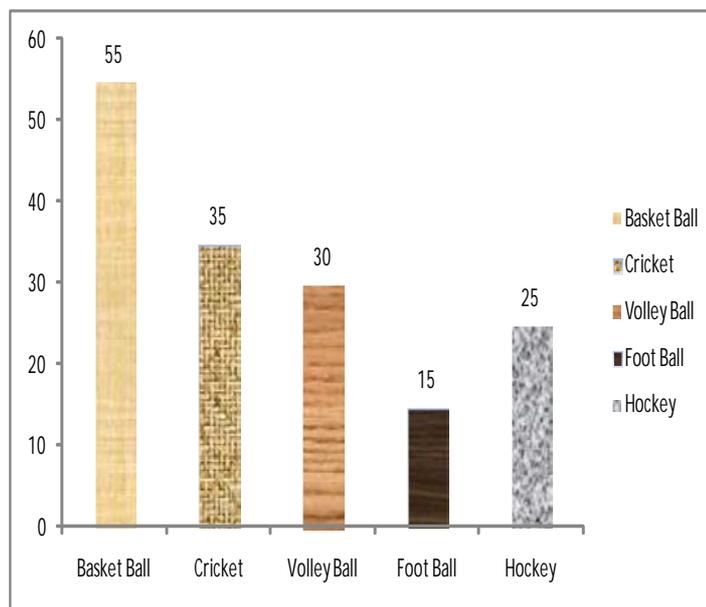
1. The Sports Graph
2. The Railway time table
3. A message
4. A letter
5. Report Card
6. Passage

Activity – 1

## THE SPORTS GRAPH

The children of class V of Bal Vidyalaya have to take up one of the following games – Basket Ball, Cricket, Volleyball, Football and Hockey.

The graph shows the number of children each game.



### A. Answer these questions

1. Which game has the highest number of participants?
2. How many students are playing hockey?
3. Which is more popular – volley ball or foot ball?
4. What is the total number of children playing cricket and volley ball?
5. Are more children playing volley ball or hockey?
6. How many games are played in the school?

### B. Write T for True statements and F for False statements.

7. More children are playing basketball than cricket.
8. Football is the least popular game.
9. Hockey and foot ball are less popular than basket ball.
10. Volleyball is the most popular game.

**C. Match the columns**

- |                                  |    |
|----------------------------------|----|
| 11. Children playing basket ball | 35 |
| 12. Children playing football    | 55 |
| 13. Children playing hockey      | 25 |
| 14. Children playing cricket     | 15 |

**Answers**

- |                          |                |                |
|--------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| <b>A.</b> 1. Basket Ball | 2. Twenty Five | 3. Volley Ball |
| 4. Sixty Five            | 5. Volley Ball | 6. Five games  |
| <b>B.</b> 7. True        | 8. True        | 9. True        |
| 10. False                | 11. 55         | 12. 15         |
| 13. 25                   | 14. 35         |                |

\*\*\*\*\*

Activity – 2

**THE RAILWAY TIME TABLE**

Time table at the New Delhi Railway Station

Name of the train	Arrival At New Delhi	Departure from New Delhi	Plat form No.
1. Rajdhani Express (Delhi to Mumbai)	10.00 am	4.30 p.m.	3
2. Shatabdi Express (Delhi to Bhopal)	7.00 p.m.	6.00 am	5
3. Jammu Tawi Express (Delhi to Jammu)	6.00 a.m.	10 pm	1
4. Punjab Mail (Amritsar to Mumbai)	10.00 a.m.	10.30 pm	4
5. Howrah Express (Delhi to Bangalore)	11.00 a.m.	4.30 p.m.	6
6. Karnataka Express (Delhi to Bangalore)	9.00 a.m.	9.00 p.m.	2

**Read the above Railway time table and fill in the blanks.**

1. This time table is put up at ..... railway station.
2. Arrival means to ..... and ..... means to leave the station.
3. .... Express goes from Delhi to Jammu.
4. Rajdhani Express and ..... arrive at New Delhi Station at 10.00 a.m.
5. According to this time table, there are ..... platforms on the station.
6. Karnataka Express leaves the station at .....
7. .... does not start from Delhi.
8. The two trains that can take us to Mumbai are ..... and .....
9. .... arrives at platform no. 6.
10. Shatabdi Express goes till .....
11. Karnataka Express arrives at ..... (time)
12. Jammu Tawi Express leaves the station at night but Shatabdi Express departs in the .....
13. The Common station for all the trains is .....
14. The Punjab Mail leaves New Delhi station to go to .....
15. ...., ....., ..... and New Delhi are some of the names of the stations mentioned in the time table.

**Answers**

1. New Delhi
2. Come, departure
3. Jammu Tawi Express
4. Punjab Mail
5. 6
6. 9.00 pm
7. Punjab Mail
8. Rajdhani Express and Punjab Mail
9. Howrah Express
10. Bhopal
11. 9.00 am
12. Morning
13. New Delhi
14. Mumbai
15. Mumbai, Bhopal, Jammu, Howrah, Bangalore (any three)

\*\*\*\*\*

Activity – 3

**A MESSAGE**

It was 3 o'clock. Gautam came back from school. The door was locked. He remembered – whenever mummy goes out, she leaves the key with the neighbours. So he got the key from the neighbours and opened the door. He threw his bag on the dining table. There under the flower vase he saw his Mummy's note. It said

Gautam,

Your 'Nani' is not well so I'm going to her house. I'll come back at about 6'O clock. After changing your dress, have your lunch. Don't forget to wash your hands before that. Then, take some rest. Finish your homework. You can go to play after 5 p.m. only if you have finished your home work. Don't forget to lock the front door and leave the key with Aunt.

Your Mummy.

**A. Choose the correct answer**

1. The key was with
  - a. Mummy
  - b. Nani
  - c. The Neighbour
  - d. Gautam
2. The note was
  - a. under the bag
  - b. in the flower – vase
  - c. under the table
  - d. under the flower – vase
3. After reaching home, Gautam should first
  - a. wash his hands
  - b. change his dress
  - c. do his home work
  - d. have lunch
4. Mummy will return home at
  - a. 6 p.m.
  - b. 5 p.m.
  - c. 3 p.m.
  - d. 8 p.m.

5. 'He saw his mummy's note – 'note' here means
  - a. money
  - b. written message
  - c. diary
  - d. a piece of paper

**B. Complete the sentence**

6. Mummy went to 'Nani's house' because .....
7. 'Don't forget to wash your hand before that' 'That' here stands for .....
8. Gautam could go for playing after .....

**C. Answer the following questions**

9. When does Gautam come back from school ?
10. Why was the door locked ?
11. Whom was the note meant for ?
12. Which sentence shows that Mummy always leaves the key with the neighbours?
13. Mention two things which Gautam was asked not to forget?
14. Where was Gautam asked to leave the key?

**Answers**

1. C
2. D
3. B
4. A
5. B
6. She was not well
7. Lunch
8. He had finished his home – work
9. at 3 pm
10. Mummy had gone out
11. Gautam
12. 'Whenever Mummy goes out, she leaves the key with the neighbours'.
13. Lock the front door/ wash hands before lunch / leave the key with the neighbours (any two)
14. With the neighbours / aunt

\*\*\*\*\*

Activity – 4

**A LETTER**

27, Car Street  
Mangaluru – 575 001  
15.11.1997

Dear Ravi,

How are you ? It must be very cold in Shimla! I hope you are having lots of fun. Mangaluru is very humid these days – because it is close to the sea. Winter seem to be far away. Who would say that it is the month of November here! Even these days fans are needed. I wish I could come to Shimla! I remember last year when I had come to your house in winter. One day your father’s jeep got stuck in the road due to the heavy snow. We got out of the jeep and hit snow balls at each other and made a snow man. I am really looking forward to going to a hill station soon.

Give my regards to your parents and love to Akshay Bhaiya. Write to me soon.

Your loving friend

Rahul

**A. Choose the correct answer :**

1. Ravi’s father’s jeep got stuck in  
a. mud            b. sand            c. snow
2. Rahu visited Shimla during  
a. the rains      b. winter      c. summer

**B. Write True or False against the statements**

3. Ravi wants to go to Shimla (      )
4. Mangaluru was very cold when the letter was written (      )
5. Ravi has a brother. (      )
6. Rahul has been to Shimla before (      )

**C. Find the word from the passage which means :**

7. damp weather
8. to keep in mind
9. unable to move

**D. Answer these question :**

10. In which city does Rahul live ?
11. Why does Rahul wants to go to Shimla? Give two reasons.
12. What did he do last year in Shimla with Ravi?
13. Why is Mangaluru humid?

**Answers**

1. c. Snow
2. b. Winter
3. False
4. False
5. True
6. True
7. Humid
8. Remember
9. Stuck
10. Mangaluru
11. To make snowman and play in the snow (hit snow balls at each other)
12. Made snowman and hit snowballs at each other.
13. Because it is close to the sea.

\*\*\*\*\*

Activity – 5

**REPORT CARD**

Raju is a student of class X. Look at his Report Card and notice his marks and grades in I and II Terminal Tests in different subjects.

Subject	Maximum Marks	1 <sup>st</sup> Terminal Test	2 <sup>nd</sup> Terminal Test
English	20	12	14
Hindi	20	15	17
Sanskrit	20	17	18
Maths	20	05	05
S. Studies	20	07	07
Gen. Science	20	10	12
Drawing	Gr.	B Grade	A Grade
Music	Gr.	A Grade	A Grade

**A. Answer the following questions**

1. In which term did Raju do better?
2. Which is his weakest subject ?
3. In which subject did he get the highest marks?
4. In which subjects has Raju improved his marks?
5. In which subjects has he shown no improvement?
6. Which subjects have only grades and not marks?
7. In which subject did Raju get the same grade in both the Terminal Tests?
8. By how many marks did he improve in general science in the second Term?

**B. Complete the sentence :**

9. Raju should give more attention to ..... and .....
10. Raju loves music. That is why he got ..... in both the terms.
11. Raju has to study ..... subjects in Class X.

12. The maximum marks in the Terminal Test for each subject are .....

13. Raju's Report Card shows that he is ..... in languages.

### Answers

1. 2<sup>nd</sup> Term
2. Maths
3. Sanskrit
4. English, Hindi, Sanskrit and Gen. Science
5. Maths and S. Studies
6. Drawing and Music
7. Maths and S. Studies
8. Two marks
9. Maths and Social Studies
10. A grade
11. 6 Subjects
12. 20
13. good

\*\*\*\*\*



**Answers.**

A. 1. b. space

2. c. an American

3. b. July 1969

B. a. right

b. first

c. leave

C. 1. because there is no air to breathe

2. because it supplies them with air and keeps their bodies at the right temperature

3. a Russian astronaut, the first man to orbit the earth

4. set foot on the moon for the first time

\*\*\*\*\*





4. **“The monk would get up early. Rain or Sun, he ..... be always seen on the road in the morning.**

- |          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| a. could | b. should |
| c. might | d. dare   |

**Ans.: a. could**

5. **No house can be properly kept without a house wife. This definition of house..... include the children.**

- |         |          |
|---------|----------|
| a. must | b. might |
| c. need | d. can   |

**Ans.: a. must**

6. **An incorrect posture can strain our backs. This ..... be avoided**

- |         |          |
|---------|----------|
| a. must | b. need  |
| c. can  | d. might |

**Ans. a. must**

7. **A: The train is about to move.**

**B: If ..... run fast to catch the train**

- |            |          |
|------------|----------|
| a. have to | b. might |
| c. may     | d. can   |

**Ans. : have to**

8. **Computers can provide information on any topic with the click of the mouse. Some people .....think that they will replace the teachers in future.**

- |            |          |
|------------|----------|
| a. may     | b. might |
| c. have to | d. shall |

**Ans.: may**

9. **What sort of job ..... you like? In your new job you like? In your new job you may have a chance to go abroad.**

- |          |           |
|----------|-----------|
| a. would | b. will   |
| c. shall | d. should |

**Ans.: would**

10. **Sickness may be defined as the unhealthy condition of body. Fevers ..... be classified into many kinds.**

- |          |            |
|----------|------------|
| a. can   | b. have to |
| c. might | d. must    |

**Ans.: a. can**

2. **Fill in the blanks choosing the right form of the verbs given in brackets.**

- i. You can ..... (see) him now.

**Ans.: see**

See, how he ..... (be+stand)

**Ans.: is standing**

His face is ..... (wrinkle)

**Ans.: Wrinkled.**

- ii. All machines require energy to make them work. This energy is ..... (supply) by fuel. Fuel ..... (exist) in various forms; Petrol and electricity, food and oxygen to mention only some.

**Ans. : supplied, exists**

- iii. My uncle ..... (have) a cow. He ..... (buy) it in the market yesterday.

**Ans. : has, bought**

- iv. Sunder ..... (be + study) in Govt. High School last year. The Govt. closed that school. So Sunder ..... (take) the transfer Certificate

**Ans.: was studying, took**

- v. Jayalakshmi is a classical singer. She ..... (earn) money by giving tuitions. She ..... (be+go) to give a concert in the Town Hall tomorrow.

**Ans.: earns, is going**

- vi. India ..... (be+rule) by foreigners for many centuries. Leaders like Gandhiji ..... (fight) for freedom. Now India ..... (be) a democratic country.

**Ans.: was ruled, fought, is**

- vii. Moments later, his father ..... (leave) the room. When he returned, his arms ..... (be) full of paints and brushes, He ..... (nod) his head but his eyes ..... (remain) sad.

**Ans.: left, were, nodded, remained**

- viii. Swami's father ..... (sit) gloomily. .... (gaze) at the newspaper on his lap. Swami ..... (rise) quietly and walked to his bed. Granny ..... (be+sit) on her bed, waiting for him.

**Ans.: sat, gazing, rose, was sitting**

- ix. Hemalatha : Menaka, ..... (Do) your husband eat sweets everyday?

Menaka : yes, he ..... (eat)

Hemalatha: Please tell him that eating sweets ..... (be) bad for health.

Menaka : He also ..... (know) But he is fond of ..... (eat) sweets.

**Ans.: Does, eats, is, knows, eating.**

- x. Kalpana informs her son Dharma Pal that she will be ..... (return) home late in the (go) to ..... (attend) a conference at Malik Hotel. Dharma Pal ..... (have) to go for his coaching classes.

**Ans.: returning, go, attend, has**

- xi. Using his utmost efforts he ..... (open) his eyes. He ..... (stare) in the darkness and ..... (see) something ..... (more)

**Ans.: opened, stared, saw, moving**

- xii. Mrs. Sappleton ..... (enter) the room and apologized for ..... (come) late. She hoped that the open window did not bother. Mr. Nuttel. She ..... (tell) him that her husband and brothers would ..... (come) home straight from shooting.

**Ans.: entered, coming, told, come**

- xiii. I ..... (argue) with him but it was useless. Finally he ..... (sign) the deed and ..... (take) the money but refused to ..... (take) more than the amount agreed upon.

**Ans.: argued, signed, took, take**

- xiv. With a desperate effort he ..... (open) his eyes. He ..... (put) his hand out to feel his granny's presence at his side as ..... (be) his habit, but he only ..... (touch) the wooden leg of the bench.

**Ans.: opened, put, was, touched**

xv. The first baby bomb was ..... (drop) on the densely populated industrial town on Hiroshima in Japan on 6<sup>th</sup> August 1945. The city of Hiroshima ..... (be+flatten). At least 78,000 people and possibly many thousands more were ..... (kill) or fatally injured.

**Ans.: dropped, was flattened, killed**

xvi. She ..... (hand) him a sack and stick also. Velu ..... (be confuse). Then Jaya ..... (explain) that she was a rag picker.

**Ans.: handed, was confused, explained**

xvii. Bepin Babu ..... (ask) his driver Sitaram to ..... (drive) by the Ganga. He ..... (regret) having paid any heed to Ghosh. Yet the incident ..... (haunt) his mind.

**Ans.: asked, drive, regretted, haunted**

xviii The social fabric ..... (be) in bad shape. Religious leaders ..... (preach) absurd practices like untouchability and child marriage. In truth Indian ..... (have) lost their self respect. The British ..... (scorn) them

**Ans.: was, preached, had, scorned**

xix I cannot ..... (forget) this day I ..... (make) my first speech in school today. Our school..... (have + arrange) this competition.

**Ans: forget, made, had arranged.**

\*\*\*\*\*

## VOICE (PASSIVE FORM)

### a. Read the conversation

A: Have you completed the work?

B: No, not yet, we are attending to that work now.

The passive form of the underlined sentence is ..... (Choose the right one)

- a. That work was attended to now
- b. That work is being attended to now
- c. That work is attended to now
- d. That work will be attended to now

**Ans. : b. That work is being attended to now.**

### b. Choose the best alternatives which is in the passive form

#### 1. The chief guest distributed the prizes

- a. The prizes were distributed by the Chief Guest
- b. The prizes are distributed by the Chief Guest
- c. The prizes will be distributed by the Chief Guest
- d. The prizes are being distributed by the Chief Guest

**Ans.: The prizes were distributed by the Chief Guest**

#### 2. Leela has written a book

- a. A book is written by Leela
- b. A book had been written by Leela
- c. A book has been written by Leela
- d. A book will be written by Leela

**Ans. : b. A book has been written by Leela**

#### 3. Do the work

- a. Work is done by you
- b. Work was done by him
- c. Let me do the work

- d. Let the work be done

**Ans. : d. Let the work be done**

- c. Read the conversation. Choose the correct passive voice for each of the underlined sentences.**

Lakshmi : Have you written all the answers correctly?

Sharada : Yes, I have written all the answers correctly.

- All the answers are written correctly by me
- All the answers have been written correctly by me
- All the answers were written correctly by me
- All the answers are being written correctly by me

**Ans. b. All the answers have been correctly written by me**

- d. Read the conversation**

1. The government has been decided to change the pattern of question paper. It has hoped ..... The students will like the new pattern. The passive form of the underlined sentence is .....

- The new pattern will be liked by the students
- The new pattern would be liked by the students
- The new pattern can be liked by the students
- The new pattern will is liked by the students

**Ans.: b. The new pattern would be liked by the students.**

2. Mr. Jain is a rich gold merchant. Last night some thieves broke into the house of Mr. Jain. The thieves planned the robbery very carefully.

- The robbery was planned by the thieves very carefully
- The robbery will be planned by the thieves carefully
- The robbery is planned by the thieves very carefully
- The robbery is being planned by the thieves very carefully

3. A : Is there Nisha in the house

B : She is cooking food in the kitchen

**The Passive form of the underlined sentence is**

- The food is being cooked by her

- b. The food was cooked by her.
  - c. The food are being cooked by her
  - d. The food has been cooked by her
4. A : I kept a mango here, where is it?  
B : He had eaten a mango.

**The Passive form of the underlined sentence is**

- a. A mango had been eaten by him
  - b. A mango have been eaten by I
  - c. A mango had been eaten by he
  - d. A mango has been eaten by him
5. A. did you attend the programme?  
B. Yes, I have attended the programme.

**The passive form of the underlined sentence is**

- a. The programme has been attended by me
- b. The programme has being attended by me
- c. The programme have been attended by me
- d. The programme is being attended by her.

\*\*\*\*\*

## QUESTION TAGS

### I. Add suitable question tags.

#### 1. He could play very confidently.

- |                 |              |
|-----------------|--------------|
| a. Couldn't he? | b. Could he? |
| c. Can he?      | d. Can't he? |

**Ans.: Couldn't he?**

#### 2. You cannot help others.

- |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|
| a. Can he?   | b. Cann'the? |
| c. Could he? | d. Will he?  |

**Ans.: a. Can he?**

#### 3. She is Nishchitha.

- |               |             |
|---------------|-------------|
| a. isn't she? | b. is she   |
| c. does she?  | d. did she? |

**Ans.: a. isn't she?**

#### 4. Raghav is singing a song.

- |              |               |
|--------------|---------------|
| a. isn't he? | b. is he?     |
| c. was he?   | d. wasn't he? |

**Ans.: a. isn't he?**

#### 5. Latha is not reading.

- |                |              |
|----------------|--------------|
| a. is he?      | b. isn't he? |
| c. will he? d. | won't he?    |

**Ans.: a. isn't he?**

#### 6. I work hard.

- |              |          |
|--------------|----------|
| a. Don't I?  | b. Do I? |
| c. Does I?d. | do we?   |

**Ans.: Don't I?**

**7. We worked hard.**

- |               |             |
|---------------|-------------|
| a. Did I?     | b. Didn't I |
| c. Didn't we? | d. Do we    |

**Ans.: c. Didn't we?**

**8. They have two books.**

- |                  |               |
|------------------|---------------|
| a. Haven't they? | b. Have they? |
| c. has she?      | d. had they   |

**Ans.: a. Haven't they?**

**9. She has written in.**

- |                  |             |
|------------------|-------------|
| a. hasn't she?   | b. has she? |
| c. haven't they? | d. had she? |

**Ans.: a. hasn't she?**

**10. He will tell us truth.**

- |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|
| a. won't he? | b. will he?  |
| c. can he?   | d. could he? |

**Ans.: a. won't he?**

**a. Let's start, now, .....?**

**The question tag to be used above is.**

- |            |              |
|------------|--------------|
| a. Can we? | b. Shall we? |
| c. do we?  | d. must we?  |

**Ans.: b. Shall we?**

**b. Read the conversation and fill in the question tag.**

Officer : Good morning, Madam

Lady : Ah, Good morning Sir

Nice day, ..... ?

(is it, isn't it, doesn't it, wasn't it)

**Ans.: isn't it**

**c. The officer drives the car. The question tag to be used for the above is**

- a. does he?
- b. doesn't he?
- c. is he?
- d. isn't he?

**Ans.: doesn't he?**

**d. Lift the table. The question tag to be used for the above is**

- a. won't you?
- b. can't you?
- c. can you?
- d. couldn't you

**Ans.: won't you?**

**e. Antony never goes to school late, .....? Fill in the blank with a question tag.**

**Ans.: does he?**

**f. I am fond of reading, .....? Fill in the right question tag**

**Ans.: amn't I? am I not?**

\*\*\*\*\*

## LINKING WORDS

Fill in the blanks using the appropriate linking words given in brackets.

(and, that, after, so)

1. The summons came from the soviet president ..... I had to go there. At the meeting, was shown a letter from the American president ....., to my surprise, ..... a few days. I was called to Geneva. The meeting was held so ..... that we could hold talks

**Ans. and, so, after, that**

2. (not only, though, but also, because)

Sir, M. Vishvesvaraya was a disciplined person. .... he was lean, he was strong in mind. At the request of the Maharaja of Mysore, he accepted the post of Chief Engineer. Later he became the Diwan of Mysore. He made a name ..... as an engineer ..... as a statesman. People of Mandya worship him ..... he got a dam built across the river Kaveri at Karnataka

**Ans.: Though, not only, but also, because**

3. (but, and, both, because)

Dr. S. Radhakrishna was ..... an educationist ..... a statesman. He served our country as the vice-president ..... the president of India. When he was about to leave Russia, Stalin invited him to his palace and said, "I am sad ..... you are going back to your country. I want to live longer ..... I may not.

**Ans.: both, and, and, because, but**

4. (and, as, because, if)

Venkatesh is a physician. Everyone likes him ..... he has a lot of patience ..... talks to the patients politely. .... any patient doesn't have money to buy medicines, he will give him money. .... he is honest ..... service minded, the Govt. has honoured him

**Ans.: because, and, if, As, and**

5. (that, but, and, though)

Radha ..... Rukmini are sisters. Radha is lazy. .... she is lazy, she is intelligent. Her father knows ..... she would get distinction in M.B.B.S.

**Ans.: and, but, though, that**

1. In March ..... April the coffee blossom time in Coorg. .... blossoms transform into berries, the bushes are cropped. The Cherry-red fruit is ..... pulped the seeds separated, dried and sent for curing. Coorg ..... Kodagu is the district which is one of the largest producers of pepper, Cardamom and honey in the world.

**Ans.: and, when, then, or**

2. More than the physical ..... mental problems, my biggest headache was my financial situation. I was getting ready for the final frontier, my father was bed ridden ..... a lot of money was needed for his treatment. .... the family had very little to offer me

**Ans.: or, when, and, so**

3. He saw a bird ..... was unlike any he had ever seen before. It had a longish tail ..... a black crest. .... the most interesting thing about the bird was its restless energy ..... he liked the bird very much.

**Ans.: that, and, but, so**

4. He found ..... there was no food at home. He became desperate by starvation. He went to an ant. He requested him to lend him a shelter from rain ..... some food. He added that ..... the ant did not do what he wanted he would die. The ant replied that the ants did not ever borrow ..... lend.

**Ans. : That, and, if, or**

5. He walked to the hotel in perfect silence, a silence ..... heavy that I could hardly breathe. The hotel seemed to be far away and ..... not far enough. That night, ..... I served her at table the temptation to touch her was overpowering ..... I had almost forgotten myself when I dropped her coffee cup.

**Ans.: So, yet, as, and**

1. Her hands reached ..... the steel railing above, but finding only air. Roma was thrown out ..... the coach. The clattering roar of ..... train muffled the thud of her fall on to the ground more than ..... metre below.

**Ans.: for, of, the, a**

2. It took months of negotiation ..... come to ..... under standing with the old man. He was ..... no hurry. What he had ..... most of the time.

**Ans.: to, an, in the**

3. They had come ..... high hopes in ..... miracles of modern science They told themselves that Anant would be cured ..... the hospital, and he would again walk and run and even take part in the forthcoming table tennis tournament. And he would play the sitar and perhaps would be ..... great satirist one day.

**Ans.: with, the, at, a**

4. Hafeez Contractor was ..... very unhappy school boy. In the first and second year he was a good student. From ..... third standard onwards, he seemed ..... have lost all in studies. He was particularly afraid ..... Mathematics.

**Ans. : a, the, to, of**

5. The English and ..... Germans were ..... war. The two armies stood ..... their respective teaches on man's land. Suddenly Macpherson saw someone waving ..... white flag from the enemy side.

**Ans.: the, at, in, a**

6. Earlier England was important ..... the author only because there was Cambridge. Now it had ..... greater appeal ..... him. He had met Stephan Hawking there during a walking tour. He is ..... successor of Issac Newton.

**Ans.: to, a, for, the**

7. There was a rumor that Gather gold looked like ..... Great Stone Face. Gather gold had the face of ..... old man ..... yellow skin. The people considered him the image ..... the Great Stone Face.

**Ans.: the an, with, of**

8. There had been ..... accident when he went hiking ..... his father and brother. They were crossing ..... rickety bridge ..... some rapids.

**Ans.: an, with, a, over.**

9. Suman and another boy turned up ..... they had finished their dinner that night. The boy staggered in ..... large newspaper – covered parcel ..... his hands. Where shall I take it? Amma : My room Okay. No I think ..... Puja room is better.

**Ans.: after, a, in, the**

10. The next day Ranji came again. He enjoyed ..... lot in the coolness of the water. After ..... hour, he lay to relax ..... the smooth rocks. It was then that he noticed a boy staring at him ..... a hostile manner.

**Ans.: a, an, on, in**

\*\*\*\*\*

## **‘WH’ QUESTIONS (MULTIPLE CHOICE QUESTIONS)**

**Frame a ‘wh’ question .**

**1. They see the P.M. in the parliament?**

- a. Where do they see in the P.M.?
- b. Were did they see the P.M.?
- c. Where did he see the P.M.?
- d. Who is the P.M.?

**Ans.: a. Where do they see in the P.M.?**

**2. Sujay and Supriya are Radha’s Cousins.**

- a. Who are Radha’s Cousins?
- b. Who were Radha’s Cousins?
- c. Who do Radha’s Cousins?
- d. Who Radha’s Cousins’ are?

**Ans.: a. Who are Radha’s Cousins?**

**3. Yoga keeps the body fit and healthy.**

**Ans.: How does Yoga keeps body?**

**4. The children love playing with Rambo.**

**Ans.: What do children love?**

**5. This novel was written in 1946.**

**Ans.: When was this novel written?**

**6. The briefcase was stolen at the station.**

**Ans.: Where was the briefcase stolen?**

**7. The books were collected by the students.**

**Ans.: By whom the books were collected?**

**8. Rajan visits temple twice a week.**

**Ans.:** How often Rajan visits temple?

**9. Students have bought 10 photos for school.**

**Ans.:** How many photos do the students brought?

**10. Jashmi took class for two hours.**

**Ans.** How long Jashmi took the class?

\*\*\*\*\*

## **‘IF CLAUSE’ (THIRD CONDITION)**

**Complete the following statements:**

- 1. I would like to buy the house. But it is costly. If the house had been cheap I would .....**

**Ans. :** have bought it.

- 2. Monsoon rains failed. Farmers couldn't grow crops.**

**Newspaper reported : If it had rained the farmers .....**

**Ans.:** could (would) have grown crops.

- 3. Shashi scored less marks in 10<sup>th</sup> Standard. So he couldn't get seat in the college. His father said If he had scored good marks .....**

**Ans.:** he would have got seat in the college.

- 4. It is raining heavily. If it had not rained .....**

**Ans.:** we would have gone for a week.

- 5. There is a function in the college. They did not invite us. If we had been invited .....**

**Ans.:** we would have attended the function

- 6. She has annual examination in the next month. She is not working hard. If she had worked hard .....**

**Ans.:** She would have passed in the exam.

- 7. they do not have money. They need it very baelly. If you had asked me .....**

**Ans.:** I would have given you.

- 8. Ram is very slow in getting ready. He has to catch the train. If Ram had not hurried .....**

**Ans.:** he would have missed the train.

- 9. Ashoka was a wise king. Now – a – days also people remember him If the kind had ruled wisely .....**

The people would have praised him.

**10. One should have better guidance to achieve something in life.**

**If we had better guidance .....**

**Ans.:** We would have achieved our goal.

**Choose the correct answer and write it. (Finite and nonfinite verbs)**

**1. She walks home**

- |           |                 |
|-----------|-----------------|
| a. finite | b. non – finite |
| c. Gerund | d. Participle   |

**Ans.: a. finite**

**2. She walked home.**

- |           |                 |
|-----------|-----------------|
| a. finite | b. non – finite |
| c. Gerund | d. Participle   |

**Ans.: a. finite**

**3. He loves camping in the woods**

- |                 |               |
|-----------------|---------------|
| a. non – finite | b. infinitive |
| c. participle   | d. finite     |

**Ans.: a. non-finite**

**4. I need to go to sleep.**

- |                 |               |
|-----------------|---------------|
| a. non – finite | b. participle |
| c. finite       | d. noun       |

**Ans.: a. non-finite**

**5. The sleeping dog caused a delay**

- |                 |           |
|-----------------|-----------|
| a. non – finite | b. Gerund |
| c. infinitive   | d. finite |

**Ans.: a. non-finite**

**6. I hate camping**

- |                 |           |
|-----------------|-----------|
| a. non – finite | b. finite |
| c. Adjective    | d. noun   |

**Ans.: a. non-finite**

**7. I want to go there.**

- |                 |           |
|-----------------|-----------|
| a. non – finite | b. finite |
| c. Adjective    | d. Gerund |

**Ans.: a. non-finite**

**8. We ate our roasted marshmallows**

- |                 |               |
|-----------------|---------------|
| a. non – finite | b. Adjective  |
| c. gerund       | d. infinitive |

**Ans.: a. non-finite**

**9. I live in Germany**

- |           |               |
|-----------|---------------|
| a. finite | b. non-finite |
| c. gerund | d. infinitive |

**Ans.: a. finite**

**10. We went to school at 9 a.m.**

- |           |               |
|-----------|---------------|
| a. finite | b. non-finite |
| c. gerund | d. infinitive |

**Ans.: a. finite**

\*\*\*\*\*

## SUBJECT – VERB AGREEMENT

**Choose the correct verb out of the two given in brackets:**

1. There ..... two boys standing there (is/are)

**Ans. : are**

2. There ..... many students in the school (is/are)

**Ans.: are**

3. There ..... a proper balance of emotions and intelligence in him (is/are)

**Ans.: is**

4. There ..... complete darkness inside (is/are)

**Ans.: is**

5. A new house ..... a lot of money (cost/costs)

**Ans.: costs**

6. The new car ..... very fast (run/runs)

**Ans.: runs**

7. One of the players ..... from my village (come/comes)

**Ans.: comes**

8. Every leaf ..... fallen from this tree. (has/have)

**Ans.: has**

9. One of the boys ..... punished (was/were)

**Ans.: was**

10. Bread and butter ..... his daily diet. (was/were)

**Ans.: was**

1. My friend ..... cricket (play/plays)

**Ans.:**

2. One of the pupils in our class ..... punished by our teacher (was/were)

**Ans.:**

3. Wheat, rice and barley ..... cereals (is/are)

**Ans.:**

4. His friend and benefactor ..... come to see him (has/have)

**Ans.:**

5. There ..... twelve books on the shelf (is/are)

**Ans.:**

6. There ..... a lot of people in the concert. (was/were)

**Ans.:**

7. There ..... a lot of oil in the dish. (is/are)

**Ans.:**

8. A gang of thieves ..... caught by the police (was/were)

**Ans.:**

9. There ..... a pair of shoes in the cupboard. (is/are)

**Ans.:**

10. The information we got ..... not correct. (was/were)

**Ans.:**

11. What ..... the latest news? (is/are)

**Ans.:**

12. Physics ..... my favourite subject in school (was/were)

**Ans.:**

13. Each/none/either/neither of the players ..... selected for the state team. (was/were)

**Ans.:**

14. Maria with her friend ..... sent out of the class (was/were)

**Ans.:**

## **DEGREES OF COMPARISON**

**1. Roma is the wisest girl**

**Positive degree of the above sentence is**

- a. No other girl is as wise as Roma
- b. No other girl was as wise as Roma
- c. Roma is wiser than all the other girls
- d. All girls are as wise as Roma

**Ans.: a. No other girl is as wise as Roma**

**2. No other metal is as useful as steel.**

**Superlative degree of the above sentence is**

- a. Steel is the most useful metal.
- b. Steel was the most useful metal
- c. Steel is more useful than other metals
- d. Steel is the use fullest metal

**Ans.: a. Steel is the most useful metal**

**3. Don Anselmo was the oldest man in the village**

**Comparative degree of the above sentence is**

- a. Don Anselmo was more old than any other man in the village
- b. Don Anselmo was more older than any other man in the village
- c. Don Anselmo was older than any other man in the village
- d. No other man in the village is as older as Don Anselmo

**Ans.: Don Anselmo was older than any other man in the village**

**4. Joyce is the most intelligent girl in her class**

**Positive Degree of the above sentence is**

- a. Joyce is more intelligent than any other girl in her class
- b. No other girl in her class is as intelligent as Joyce
- c. Joyce is intelligent than any other girl in her class
- d. Joyce is the intelligent girl in her class

**Ans.: b. No other girl in her class is as intelligent as Joyce.**

**5. Bengaluru is one of the most expensive cities in Karnataka**

**Comparative degree of the above sentence is**

- a. Bengaluru is more expensive than any other city in Karnataka
- b. Bengaluru is expansivest city in Karnataka
- c. No other city in Karnataka is as expensive as Bengaluru
- d. Bengaluru is more expensive than any other city in Karnataka

**Ans.: a. Bengaluru is more expensive than any other city in Karnataka**

\*\*\*\*\*

**WRITING**  
**LETTER WRITING**

You are Nikita. Your summer vacation is about to end. Write a letter to your friend Shruti, telling her which books you have read during the vacation. You can make use of the hints given below.

- was not bored
- Alice in wonderland
- Panchatantra – fables
- Stories of Tenali Rama – humour, witty
- books – best friend
- amazed

**Ans.:**

**LAYOUT OF AN INFORMAL LETTER**

Sender's Address

Date.

Salutation

.....  
.....content (Body of the letter)  
.....  
.....

Subscription

Signature

\*\*\*\*\*

**You are Sakhis/Santhosh resident of Vijayanagar. There are no street lights in your locality and this is a cause of great inconvenience. Write a letter to the editor telling him about the problems faced by the residents because of the above mentioned problem. You can make use of the hints given below.**

**Ans.:**

### **LAYOUT OF A FORMAL LETTER**

Sender's Address

.....  
.....  
.....

Date.: .....

Receiver's Designation and Address

.....  
.....  
.....

Salutation .....

Subject .....

.....  
.....content (Body of the letter)  
.....  
.....

Subscription

Signature

\*\*\*\*\*

## MESSAGE

**The following is a telephonic conversation between Parul and Pritam. As Pritam has to leave for a movie, he leaves a message for his brother, Rishi, write the message**

Parul : Can I talk to Mr. Rishi?

Pritam : Sorry, he is not at home. May I know who is speaking?

Parul : I am Parul, from L and T.

Pritam : Would you like me to convey a message to him?

Parul : Yes. Inform him that the interview scheduled on March 15, 2014 has been postponed to March 17, 2014

Pritam : I will surely convey this message.

Thank you

**Ans.:**

Dear Rishii,

March 10, 2014

Parul from L&T had called. Your interview on March 15, 2014 has been postponed to March 17, 2014

Pritam  
2.30 pm

\*\*\*\*\*

**MESSAGE**

**Read the following conversation between Sunil and Utsav. Utsav is about to leave home for his tuition and will not be able to meet his father. He leaves a message for him. Write the message**

**Sunil** : Hello, Can I speak to Mr. Joshi? I am his colleague, Sunil.

**Utsav** : He is not at home. Can I take the message?

**Sunil** : I was supposed to come at seven. Please tell him I won't be able to make it today. However, I can come tomorrow at seven. If that is inconvenient, he may call me at home after nine today to fix another time. Will you give this message to him?

**Utsav** : Yes I will

**Sunil** : Thank you.

**Ans.:**

March 6, 2013

5.30 pm

Dear father,

Sunil, your colleague called up to say that he would not be able to come today. Instead of today he would come at seven tomorrow. If that is inconvenient, you may call him up at home after nine to fix another time.

Utsav

\*\*\*\*\*

## EDITING

### Examples

**In the passage given below, one word has been omitted in each line that has a blank along its side. Underline the place where you think a word has been omitted. Write the word in the space provided**

People should allowed to do what they	(a) <u>be</u>
Want, If they want ruin their	(b) <u>to</u>
Health smoking, that is their affair	(c) <u>by</u>
Anyway, it has really proved that	(d) <u>been</u>
There is definite link between smoking	(e) <u>a</u>
And cancer. For normal healthy people	
Smoking a harmful pleasure	(f) <u>is</u>

**A Paragraph is given below. It has four errors. Edit the paragraph, clues are given.**

Standing with the mountains top, an bird of happiness gave three loud cries. At the first cry, the golden sun broken through the clouds, a warm breeze came down from the sky.

### Clues:

- preposition to be corrected
- article to be corrected
- Verbal mistake to be corrected
- conjunction to be inserted

\*\*\*\*\*

## NOTICE

**You are Nisha/Nakul, Secretary of Sports and Games of Hari Vidyalaya, Mysore. The school has decided to hold an Inter School Kite-Flying Competition. Draft a notice in not more than 50 words informing the students about the same using the hints given below.**

**Class** : VIII – X

**Date** : February 4, 2014

**Venue** : School playground

**Time** : 11 a.m. to 1 p.m.

**Ans.:**

28, Jan. 2015

### KITE – FLYING COMPETITION

Our School is organizing Kite-flying Competition for the students from class VIII to X. Those who want to participate can give their names to their respective class teachers before February 1. Competition will be held in the school playground on February 4 from 11 a.m. to 1 p.m. All participants will get a certificate.

**Note:** Participants should bring their kites.

Nisha/Nakul

Secretary, Sports and Games.

\*\*\*\*\*

## NOTICE

### Examples

1. Your “Sports Club” is planning to go on a trekking expedition to Chamundi hills as the secretary of the club, prepare a notice for the school notice board giving the following information

- |   |
|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Date of the trip</li><li>2. Kit required</li><li>3. Charges for the trip</li><li>4. Whom to contact</li><li>5. Last date to register the names</li></ol> |
|---|

The School’s sports club is organizing a trekking programme to Chamundi hills. Those who are interested to take part in this programme can register your names before 1<sup>st</sup> of Oct to the secretary of the sports club. The charges for this programmes Rs.200.

### KIT REQUIRED

1. A. Towel 2. Water bottles c. trekking shoes etc.
2. Draft a notice to be displayed at the entrance to a Zoo, giving details about the visiting hours, cost of tickets for adults and children etc.
3. As secretary of cultural club draft a notice regarding inter-class dance competition to select candidates for Prathiba Karanji.

\*\*\*\*\*

## WRITING REPORTS

1. Complete the following news items on the basis of the headlines given above. One has been done as an examples.

**Eg.** Hud Hud Enters

Cyclone Hud, Hud made its first entry on the Coastal areas of Odisha and Andhra Pradesh causing large scale devastation of life and property.

1. Govt. renames cities
2. Prime Minister launches Swacha Bharat
3. Idols immersed in lakes

## PROFILE

**Based on the information given in the table, write a biographical Sketch**

Name	P.T. Usha
Nick Name	Payyoli Express
Date of Birth	27 <sup>th</sup> July, 1964
Place of Birth	Payyoli, Kerala
Field of Sports	Athletics running
Awards and Medals won	1. 4 gold medals and one silver medal in 1986 Asian Games 2. Padmashri and the Arjuna Award by Government of India

**Ans.:** P.T. Usha, also known as Payyoli Express was born on 27<sup>th</sup> July, 1964 at Payyoli in Kerala. She was famous athlete and had won many medals in running. She won 4 gold medals and one silver medal in 1986 Asian Games. She was conferred with Padmashree and Arjuna Award by Government of India.

\*\*\*\*\*

**Based on the information given in the table, write a biographical Sketch**

<b>Name</b>	<b>Dr. APJ Abdul Kalam</b>
Place of Birth	Rameswaram, Tamilnadu
Date of Birth	15 <sup>th</sup> October 1931
Education	Aeronautical Engineering from Madras Institute of Technology
Achievement	Project Director – Satellite Launch Vehicle III
Books Written	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>○ Wings of Fire</li> <li>○ India 2020 : A Vision for the millennium</li> <li>○ My Journey</li> <li>○ Ignited Minds</li> </ul>
Awards and Rewards	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. 30 honorary doctorate</li> <li>2. Padma Bhushan (1981)</li> <li>3. Padma Vibhushan (1990)</li> <li>4. Bharat Ratna (1997)</li> <li>5. 11<sup>th</sup> President of Indian in 2002</li> </ol>

**Ans.:**

Dr. APJ Abdul Kalam was born in 15<sup>th</sup> October 1931 at Rameshwaram in Tamilnadu. He did Aeronautical Engineering in Madras Institute of Technology. He was the project director for Satellite Launch Vehicle III (SLV III). He has written four book – Wings of Fire, India 2020: A vision of the millennium, MY Journey and Ignited Minds. He became 11<sup>th</sup> President of India in 2002. He has 30 honorary doctorates. He was awarded Padma Bhushan (1981), Padma Vibhushan (1990) and Bharath Rathna (1997) by Government of India.

\*\*\*\*\*

## E-Mail

**Last weekend you visited your grand-mother's house and were happy. Write an e-mail to your friend describing the experience in minimum 120 words using the hints given below.**

- ◆ My favourite place
- ◆ Feel comfortable and secure
- ◆ She is a good cook
- ◆ Played games and had a lot of fun

**Ans. :**

**Date** : 15 January 2015

**From** : ashab@ gmail.com

**To** : Manjular@gmail.com

**Subject** : Experience at Grandmother's house

Dear Manjula,

Since childhood my favourite place has been my grandmother's house. I feel comfortable and secure surrounded by my grandparents, aunts, uncles and cousins. My grandmother is the best cook in the world. This time she prepared Gulab Jamoons and Onion Pakoda. It was Yummy! They were awesome. There is a swimming in the backyard of my grandma's house. I played with my cousins and had a lot of fun. I never feel like coming back from her place. Next time when I go I'll take you also.

Yours friend

Asha

\*\*\*\*\*

## ARTICLE

The traffic condition of the city is worsened. Massive traffic jams reflect the Chaotic state of traffic in Bengaluru. Write an article stating the existing state of traffic on road and suggesting ways to improve the conditions. You can take the help of the hints given below. (Word limit : 100)

- ↖ Traffic congestion – serious problem
- ↖ Thousands of vehicle, inadequate infrastructure
- ↖ Traffic jam – wastage of non – renewable fuels
- ↖ Petrol and diesel worth 100 crore – wasted everyday
- ↖ Carpool
- ↖ Use bicycles
- ↖ Use public transport

\*\*\*\*\*

**Write an invitation for the Annual Day Programme.**

SEVANIKETAN HIGH SCHOOL  
GANDHINAGAR, BANGALURU

**ANNUAL DAY INVITATION**

We Cordially invite you to the  
Annual Day Celebration of  
our School

- The Headmaster,  
Staff and Students

**Programme**

- ❖ Prayer
- ❖ Welcome Speech
- ❖ Speech by the Chief Guest
- ❖ Presidential Address
- ❖ Prize Distribution
- ❖ Cultural Programme
- ❖ Vote of Thanks

**Date** : 20.01.2015

**Time** : 4.00 p.m.

**Venue** : School Premises

Note : ❖ Please occupy your seats ten minutes before the programme begins

❖ Keep your cell phones on silent mode

\*\*\*\*\*

## VOCABULARY

### Write the opposites of (Antonyms)

1. Wrong	x	right	25. cruel	x	kind
2. foe/enemy	x	friend	26. foolish	x	wise
3. bottom	x	top	27. decrease	x	increase
4. thin	x	thick	28. worse	x	bad
5. narrow	x	broad	29. stale	x	fresh
6. weak	x	strong	30. plenty	x	few
7. lean/thin	x	fat	31. latter	x	former
8. peace	x	war	32. defeat	x	win
9. ugly	x	beautiful	33. lend	x	borrow
10. dunce/dull	x	intelligent	34. bright	x	pale
11. timid	x	brave	35. curse	x	bless
12. barren	x	fertile	36. smooth	x	hard
13. difficult	x	easy	37. dangerous	x	safety
14. fall	x	rise	38. destroy	x	perfect
15. hate	x	love	39. low	x	high
16. young	x	old	40. dirty	x	clean
17. appear	x	disappear	41. lazy	x	active
18. poor	x	rich	42. weep	x	laugh
19. full	x	empty	43. loose	x	tight
20. rude	x	polite	44. absent	x	present
21. reject	x	accept	45. sorrow	x	joy
22. flexible	x	rigid/stiff	46. rude	x	polite
23. traitor	x	patriot	47. soft	x	hard
24. suspect	x	believe	48. wet	x	dry
			49. costly	x	cheap

## II Choose the correct word: (Homophones)

1. Ravi has a bean in his pocket (been, bean)  
Deepa has been to Mysore
2. There are many children playing in the park.  
Their schools are closed for three days (there, their)
3. I go to school everyday (to, too)  
Don't drive too fast.
4. Faded clothes can be dyed (died, dyed)  
The dog died of hunger
5. The company suffered heavy loss last year.  
We have to respect the laws of our state (laws, loss)
6. You are too late (too, two)  
I have two eyes
7. This road leads to Mysore (rode, road)  
I rode a car
8. We are fond of sweets (of, off)  
The flight has taken off
9. Now a days bus fare has been raised (fair, fare)  
She is a fair looking lady
10. He is walking with bare foot (bear, bare)  
It is too sensitive to bear
11. In that film cast is not good (caste, cast)  
We should eradicate caste system
12. She has a very good eye sight (site, sight)  
I purchased a site in Mysore
13. Farmers go to dairy to give the milk (dairy, diary)  
I have a habit of writing diary
14. Hare is a cute animal (hare, heir)  
He is the only heir of that property
15. Gandhiji is an ideal person (idol, ideal)  
Indians follow idol worship
16. Everyday we pray to god (prey, pray)  
Lion is waiting for its prey

17. Ramesh told me an interesting Story (story, storey)

That building has four storey

### III Choose the correct word:

All the students of class IX went to the stadium. Some (some, sum) of them participated in individual events, a few of them in group events and the remaining went to cheer up them in group events and the remaining went to cheer up their (there, their) friends. Rohit was a good runner. When the race (race, rays) began, all his friends knew (new, knew) that he would (would, wood) win. In the finals, Rohis won (one, won) the first prize (prize, price) and became the overall champion.

### IV Combine the word in Column A with its collective word in B

A	–	B
1. Book	–	<u>worm</u> , ant, hand, pen
2. long	–	small, hen, <u>run</u> , food
3. earth	–	land, water, <u>quake</u> , sun
4. railway	–	<u>station</u> , chair, run, stop
5. post	–	book, <u>box</u> , paper, table
6. honey	–	<u>moon</u> , sun, star, earth
7. wall	–	door, table, <u>clock</u> , journey
8. blood	–	post, water, book, <u>bank</u>
9. photo	–	<u>studio</u> , table, lady, man
10. money	–	coins, letter, stamps, <u>order</u>
11. charming	–	<u>girl</u> , hot, answer, book
12. self	–	<u>discipline</u> , myself, mother, stars
13. wheel	–	stool, paper, book, <u>chair</u>
14. police	–	nurse, conductor, <u>constable</u> , stand
15. hand	–	pants, sari, socks, <u>kerchief</u>
16. twinkling	–	stars, moon, sun, earth
17. break	–	lunch, dinner, fast, last
18. freedom	–	fighter, boxer, wrestler, swimmer
19. leave	–	answer, question, letter, box
20. brisk	–	run walk, sing, dance
21. shake	–	leg, mouth, hands, eye
22. mouth	–	talking, eating, watering, licking
23. nuclear	–	land, weapon, bottle, bolt
24. speedy	–	recovery, damage, task, time

**V The spelling of a word is jumbled write the word**

1. olyla – loyal
2. ggrade – ragged
3. dede – deed
4. baoed – abode
5. now – own
6. areg – rage
7. rcawl – crawl
8. obthre – bother
9. flitre – trifle
10. rftalret – flatter
11. lgisetn – glisten
12. lgaem – gleam
13. trmcou – tremour
14. lasoce – solace
15. zoed – doze
16. lbssening – blessing
17. stpudi – stupid
18. odutb – doubt
19. sotaliry – solitary
20. gola – goal
21. areg – rage
22. rreor – error
23. diayl – daily
24. maitbion – ambition

25. suonmm – summon

26. egare – eager

27. fare – fear

28. beonck – beckon

29. rpeytt - pretty

## VI How many syllables do the following words contain

1. accept – ac-cept =2

2. again – a-gain =2

3. canteen – can-teen = 2

4. conscience – con-sci-ence=3

5. reflection – re-flec-tion=3

6. direction – di-rec-tion=3

7. quiz – quiz – 1

8. whole – whole – 1

9. continent – con-ti-nent = 3

10. adventure – ad-ven-ture = 3

11. determine – de-ter-mine =3

12. wide – wide = 1

13. school – school = 1

14. people – peo-ple-2

15. primary – pri-ma-ry = 3

16. section – sec-tion =2

17. taller – tal-ler = 2

18. English – eng-lish = 2

19. anger – an-ger = 2

20. ago – a – go – 2

21. probability – pro-ba-bi-li-ty=5

22. determination – de-ter-mi-na-tion=5

23. idea – i-dea = 2

24. vanish – va-nish = 2

\*\*\*\*\*

## REFERENCE SKILL

### I. Arrange the following words in the order in which they are put in a dictionary

1. **advocate, advice, advert, adverb**  
Ans.: adverb, advert, advice, advocate
2. **accept, accord, access, account**  
Ans.: accept, access, accord, account
3. **Benzene, bend, benefit, beach**  
Ans.: beach, bend, benefit, benzene
4. **comrade, complaint, complex, comfort**  
Ans.: comfort, complaint, complex, comrade
5. **Cancer, candle, canteen, cancel**  
Ans.: Cancel, Cancer, Candle, Canteen
6. **Certify, Cerebral, Certain, Cereal**  
Ans.: Cereal, Cerebral, Certain, Certify
7. **decompose, December, Declaim, decorate**  
Ans.: December, declaim, decompose, decorate
8. **early, earnest, earth, earn**  
Ans.: early, earn, earnest, earth
9. **genices, gentle, general, genuine**  
Ans.: general, genius, gentle, genuine
10. **hero, hermit, herself, herbs**  
Ans.: herbs, hermit, hero, herself

### II. Decode the following sms into sentences:

1. **v 1 d match** = **Ans.:** we won the match
2. **lk b4 u leap** = **Ans.:** look before you leap
3. **2 n 2 makes 4** = **Ans.:** Two and Two makes four
4. **pls come b4 its 2 la8** = **Ans.:** Plase come before it is too late

5. **y r u sad?** = **Ans.:** Why are you sad?
6. **I 8 rice 4 lnch** = **Ans.:** I ate rice for lunch
7. **v r rdy 2 go** = **Ans.:** We are ready to go
8. **do d wrk n go home** = **Ans.:** Do the work and go home
9. **I cnot c d t pot** = **Ans.:** I cannot see the tea pot
10. **y day v rot d sa** = **Ans.:** Yesterday we wrote the essay
11. **v r la8 2 day** = **Ans.:** We are late today
12. **How r u?** = **Ans.:** How are you?
13. **Y R V here?** = **Ans.:** Why are we here?

\*\*\*\*\*

**Government of Karnataka  
Office of the Commissioner  
Department of Public Instruction**

Nrupathunga Road, Bengaluru - 560 001

AND

**Directorate of Urdu and other  
Minority Language Education**

Nrupathunga Road, Bengaluru - 560 001

**Co - Ordination  
Karnataka Secondary Education**

Examination Board  
Malleshwaram, Bengaluru

**INSPIRE**

X Standard  
Second Language English

**Organized by  
Sri. Mohammad Moshin**

Commissioner  
Department of Public Instruction  
Nrupathunga Road - 560 001

**Concept Developed by  
Smt. Zohara Jabeen M.**

Director  
Director of Urdu and Other  
Minority Language Education  
Nrupathunga Road, Bengaluru - 560 001

2014-15

**Co - Ordinator**  
**Smt. Manjula R.**  
Senior Assistant Director  
Directorate of Urdu and other  
Minority Language Education  
Nrupathunga Road, Bengaluru - 560 001

**Sri. Marigowda B.N.**  
Senior Assistant Director  
Directorate of Urdu and other  
Minority Language Education  
Nrupathunga Road, Bengaluru - 560 001

## **RESOURCE TEAM**

**Smt. Maria Sumangala C.**  
GJC (High School), Yelwala  
Mysore Rural

**Manjula N.**  
GHS Vinayakanagar  
Mysore North

**Laveena D'souza**  
GJC (High School)  
Karimuddanahalli  
Hunsur Taluk  
Mysore Dist.

**Suma K.P.**  
GHS  
Kanbile  
Somvarpet Taluk  
Coorg Dist.

**Joyce.L.Menezes**  
GHS  
Manchegowdana Koppal  
Mysore Rural

**Asha B.**  
GHS Hadinaru  
Nanjangud Taluk  
Mysore Dist

**Deena Knoble**  
GHS  
Vyasrajapura  
T. Narasipura Taluk  
Mysore Dist

**Molly Verghese**  
ELTC (High School)  
CTE, Mysore

## Contents

### PROSE AND POETRY

Unit - 1	A Hero	1-5
	Grandma Climbs A Tree	6-9
Unit - 2	There's a Girl By The Tracks	10-14
	Quality Of Mercy	15-18
Unit - 3	Gentlemen Of Rio En Medio	19-25
	Iam The Land	26-28
Unit - 4	The Bird Of Happiness	29-34
	Laugh And Be Merry	35-39
Unit - 5	The Concert	40-46
	Jazz Poem Two	47-50
Unit - 6	The Discovery	51-58
	Ballad Of The Tempest	59-63
Unit - 7	Colours Of Silence	64-68
	The Blind Boy	69-72
Unit - 8	Science and Hope of Survival	73-76
	Off To Outer Space Tomorrow Morning	77-79

### SUPPLEMENTARY READING

1.	On Top Of The World	80-81
2.	A Great Martyr Ever Cherished	82-83

### READING

Activity – 1	The Sports Graph	84-86
Activity – 2	The Railway Time Table	87-88
Activity – 3	A Message	89-90
Activity – 4	A Letter	91-92
Activity – 5	Report Card	93-94
Activity – 6	Passage	95-96

### GRAMMAR (LANGUAGE USE)

◆	Voice (Passive Form)	103-105
◆	Question Tags	106-108

◆	Linking words	109-112
◆	'Wh' questions (Multiple Choice Questions)	113-114
◆	'If Clause' (Third Condition)	115-117
◆	Subject – Verb Agreement	118-119
◆	Degrees of Comparison	120-121

### **WRITING**

◆	Letter Writing	122-123
◆	Message	124-125
◆	Editing	126
◆	Notice	127-128
◆	Writing Reports	129-130
◆	E-Mail	131
◆	Article	132
◆	Annual Day Programme	133

	<b>VOCABULARY</b>	134-139
--	-------------------	---------

	<b>REFERENCE SKILL</b>	140-141
--	------------------------	---------